



**Micah**

**translationNotes**

v6

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 6

**Published:** 2017-02-22

# Table of Contents

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b>	<b>9</b>
Introduction to Micah	9
Micah 1 General Notes	19
Micah 1:1	20
Micah 1:2-4	22
Micah 1:5	24
Micah 1:6-7	26
Micah 1:8-10	28
Micah 1:11-12	30
Micah 1:13-14	32
Micah 1:15-16	34
Micah 2 General Notes	36
Micah 2:1-2	37
Micah 2:3-5	39
Micah 2:6-8	41
Micah 2:9-11	43
Micah 2:12-13	45
Micah 3 General Notes	47
Micah 3:1-3	48
Micah 3:4	50
Micah 3:5-7	51
Micah 3:8	53
Micah 3:9-11	55
Micah 3:12	57
Micah 4 General Notes	58
Micah 4:1	59
Micah 4:2-3	61
Micah 4:4-5	63
Micah 4:6-8	65
Micah 4:9-10	67
Micah 4:11-12	69
Micah 4:13	71
Micah 5 General Notes	73
Micah 5:1	74
Micah 5:2-3	75
Micah 5:4-5	77
Micah 5:6-7	79
Micah 5:8-9	81
Micah 5:10-11	83
Micah 5:12-15	85

## Table of Contents

---

Micah 6 General Notes . . . . .	87
Micah 6:1-2 . . . . .	88
Micah 6:3-5 . . . . .	90
Micah 6:6-8 . . . . .	92
Micah 6:9-10 . . . . .	94
Micah 6:11-12 . . . . .	96
Micah 6:13-15 . . . . .	98
Micah 6:16 . . . . .	100
Micah 7 General Notes . . . . .	102
Micah 7:1-2 . . . . .	103
Micah 7:3-4 . . . . .	105
Micah 7:5-6 . . . . .	107
Micah 7:7-8 . . . . .	109
Micah 7:9 . . . . .	111
Micah 7:10 . . . . .	113
Micah 7:11-13 . . . . .	115
Micah 7:14-15 . . . . .	117
Micah 7:16-17 . . . . .	119
Micah 7:18 . . . . .	121
Micah 7:19-20 . . . . .	123
<b>translationQuestions . . . . .</b>	<b>125</b>
Micah 1 . . . . .	125
Micah 2 . . . . .	126
Micah 3 . . . . .	127
Micah 4 . . . . .	128
Micah 5 . . . . .	129
Micah 6 . . . . .	130
Micah 7 . . . . .	131
<b>translationWords . . . . .</b>	<b>133</b>
Aaron . . . . .	133
abomination, abominable . . . . .	134
Abraham, Abram . . . . .	135
adversary, enemy . . . . .	136
afflict, affliction . . . . .	137
Ahab . . . . .	138
Ahaz . . . . .	139
angry, anger . . . . .	140
anoint, anointed . . . . .	141
arrogant . . . . .	142
Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth . . . . .	143
assembly, assemble . . . . .	144
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire . . . . .	145
avenge, revenge, vengeance . . . . .	146

Babylon, Babylonian . . . . .	147
Balaam . . . . .	148
Bashan . . . . .	149
Bethlehem, Ephrathah . . . . .	150
bless, blessed, blessing . . . . .	151
blood . . . . .	153
bow, bow down . . . . .	154
bribe . . . . .	155
bronze . . . . .	156
brother . . . . .	157
burnt offering, offering by fire . . . . .	158
Carmel, Mount Carmel . . . . .	159
cast out, drive out, throw out . . . . .	160
chariot . . . . .	161
children, child . . . . .	162
Christ, Messiah . . . . .	163
clan . . . . .	165
compassion, compassionate . . . . .	166
counsel, counselor, advice, advisor . . . . .	167
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love . . . . .	168
cow, calf, bull, cattle . . . . .	169
darkness . . . . .	170
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive . . . . .	171
declare, declaration . . . . .	172
defile, be defiled . . . . .	173
deliver, deliverer, deliverance . . . . .	174
dishonor, dishonorable . . . . .	175
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer . . . . .	176
eagle . . . . .	177
earth, earthly . . . . .	178
Egypt, Egyptian . . . . .	179
enslave, in bondage . . . . .	180
everlasting, eternal, eternity . . . . .	181
Euphrates River . . . . .	182
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . .	183
exalt, exaltation . . . . .	185
exile, the Exile . . . . .	186
face . . . . .	187
faith . . . . .	189
faithful, faithfulness . . . . .	191
false god, foreign god, god, goddess . . . . .	192
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh . . . . .	193
fig . . . . .	194

fire . . . . .	195
firstborn . . . . .	196
flock, herd . . . . .	197
forever . . . . .	198
foundation, founded . . . . .	199
fruit, fruitful . . . . .	200
gate, gate bar . . . . .	202
Gath . . . . .	203
gift . . . . .	204
Gilead . . . . .	205
Gilgal . . . . .	206
glean, gleaning . . . . .	207
God . . . . .	208
good, goodness . . . . .	210
grape . . . . .	212
guilt, guilty . . . . .	213
hand, right hand, to hand over . . . . .	214
harvest . . . . .	216
head . . . . .	217
Hezekiah . . . . .	219
high places . . . . .	220
holy, holiness . . . . .	221
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord . . . . .	222
horse . . . . .	224
house . . . . .	225
humble, humility . . . . .	226
idol, idolatrous . . . . .	227
image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure . . . . .	228
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir . . . . .	229
iniquity . . . . .	231
innocent . . . . .	232
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel . . . . .	234
I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh . . . . .	235
Jacob, Israel . . . . .	236
Jerusalem . . . . .	237
Jotham . . . . .	239
Judah . . . . .	240
judge, judgment . . . . .	241
judge . . . . .	243
just, justice, justly . . . . .	244
kingdom . . . . .	245
Judah, kingdom of Judah . . . . .	247
king . . . . .	249

labor pains, in labor . . . . .	250
lament, lamentation . . . . .	251
last day, last days, latter days . . . . .	252
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh . . . . .	253
light . . . . .	255
lion . . . . .	256
Lord . . . . .	257
Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God . . . . .	258
lots, casting lots . . . . .	259
love . . . . .	260
majesty . . . . .	262
Micah . . . . .	263
mighty, might . . . . .	264
mind . . . . .	265
miracle, wonder, sign . . . . .	266
Miriam . . . . .	268
Moab, Moabite, Moabites . . . . .	269
mock, ridicule, scoff at . . . . .	270
Moses . . . . .	271
mourn, mourning . . . . .	272
name . . . . .	273
nation . . . . .	274
neighbor . . . . .	275
oil . . . . .	276
olive . . . . .	277
peace, peaceful . . . . .	278
people group, peoples, the people, a people . . . . .	279
people of God, my people . . . . .	281
perish, perishing, perishable . . . . .	282
pillar, column . . . . .	283
possess, possession . . . . .	284
power, powers . . . . .	285
priest, priesthood . . . . .	286
proclaim, proclamation . . . . .	288
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess . . . . .	289
prostitute, harlot, whore . . . . .	291
punish, punishment . . . . .	292
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose . . . . .	294
reap, reaper . . . . .	296
rebel, rebellious, rebellion . . . . .	297
reign . . . . .	298
rejoice . . . . .	299
remnant . . . . .	300

repent, repentance . . . . .	301
reproach . . . . .	302
restore, restoration . . . . .	303
righteous, righteousness . . . . .	304
robe . . . . .	305
rod . . . . .	306
ruin, ruins . . . . .	307
ruler, rulers, rule . . . . .	308
salvation . . . . .	309
Samaria, Samaritan . . . . .	310
save, safe . . . . .	311
Savior . . . . .	313
serpent, snake, viper . . . . .	314
shame, shameful, ashamed . . . . .	315
sheep, ram, ewe . . . . .	316
shepherd, to shepherd . . . . .	317
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . .	319
sow, sower, plant . . . . .	321
spear . . . . .	322
spirit, spiritual . . . . .	323
stone, stoning . . . . .	325
strong drink . . . . .	326
stronghold, fortress, fortified . . . . .	327
sword . . . . .	328
temple . . . . .	329
testimony, testify . . . . .	331
thresh, threshing . . . . .	332
tongue . . . . .	333
transgress, transgression . . . . .	334
true, truth, come true . . . . .	335
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness . . . . .	337
unclean . . . . .	338
unjust, unjustly, injustice . . . . .	339
vine . . . . .	340
vineyard . . . . .	341
vision . . . . .	342
voice . . . . .	343
walk . . . . .	344
watchtower, tower . . . . .	345
water, waters . . . . .	346
wine, wineskin, new wine . . . . .	347
wise, wisdom . . . . .	348
witness, eyewitness . . . . .	349



woe . . . . .	351
word . . . . .	352
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture . . . . .	353
works, deeds, work, acts . . . . .	355
worship . . . . .	356
wrath, fury . . . . .	357
Yahweh . . . . .	358
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host . . . . .	360
Zion, Mount Zion . . . . .	361
<b>translationAcademy . . . . .</b>	<b>362</b>
Abstract Nouns . . . . .	362
Active or Passive . . . . .	365
Apostrophe . . . . .	368
Doublet . . . . .	370
Ellipsis . . . . .	372
Euphemism . . . . .	374
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	376
Hyperbole . . . . .	378
Idiom . . . . .	381
Inclusive “We” . . . . .	383
Litotes . . . . .	385
Metaphor . . . . .	387
Metonymy . . . . .	392
Parallelism . . . . .	394
Personification . . . . .	396
Rhetorical Question . . . . .	398
Simile . . . . .	401
Synecdoche . . . . .	404
Forms of You . . . . .	406
How to Translate Names . . . . .	407
Numbers . . . . .	411
Translate Unknowns . . . . .	414

## translationNotes

### Introduction to Micah

#### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of the Book of Micah

1. God promises to punish the northern and the southern kingdoms (1:1–16)
2. The guilt of those who take advantage of others
  - a) The guilt of the rich who oppress the poor (2:1–11)
  - b) Promise of deliverance and restoration (2:12–13)
  - c) Condemnation of rulers, priests and prophets (3:1–12)
3. Yahweh's victory for all Israel
  - a) Yahweh's kingdom will rule over all the nations (4:1–10)
  - b) Israel will first be destroyed, and then will be victorious over its enemies (4:11–13)
  - c) Messiah will come and shepherd his flock and devastate the nations who fought against him (5:1–6)
  - d) Messiah will destroy everything that harmed his people (5:7–15)
4. Yahweh's case against Israel
  - a) Yahweh reminded them when he led them out of slavery in Egypt (6:1–5)
  - b) Israel's punishment, and true repentance (6:6–16)
5. The misery of Israel and their restoration
  - a) The brokenness and misery of Israel (7:1–7)
  - b) The coming together of nations, in Israel (7:8–13)
  - c) The incomparable view of Yahweh who restores and gives grace (7:14–20)

#### What is the Book of Micah about?

The book of Micah is a collection of many prophetic pronouncements. Micah repeated many of the great prophetic themes in Isaiah. He began his ministry in the kingdom of Israel and then moved to the kingdom of Judah. Micah warned of the pending attacks of Assyria and the coming fall of both kingdoms. Micah condemned injustice and immorality. He denounced those who did not work for a living and he renounced the false prophets who were giving Israel and Judah a sense of false security, by telling them that they were safe and that Yahweh would protect and deliver them.

Micah appealed to the people to live righteous and holy lives because of their connection with Yahweh. Their sins were evidence that they were not worshiping and serving Yahweh. The way they lived their lives, especially how they treated their fellow countrymen, proved the failure of their faith and that they had lost their love for Yahweh. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, unjust, unjustly, injustice, righteous, righteousness, holy, holiness and faith**)

**How should the title of this book be translated?**

Translators may decided to translate this traditional title “The book of Micah” in a way that is more clear to the readers.They may decide to call it, “The sayings of Micah.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Who wrote Micah?**

Micah probably wrote this book. Micah lived at the same time as Isaiah and Hosea (in the mid to late 8th century BC) during the reigns of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.

**Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts****Who is the deliverer Micah mentions?**

Micah frequently mentions a king who will deliver the people. While it is not directly mentioned to be the Messiah, it becomes clear that the person Micah mentions is the messiah, the descendant of David who will rule forever. (See: [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#) and [Christ, Messiah](#))

**Were the Israelites required to offer sacrifices or live holy lives to please Yahweh?**

While much of the Old Testament focuses on offering sacrifices according to the law of Moses, Micah explains to the people that Yahweh is only pleased when the people offer these sacrifices in faith. Without faith sacrifices become empty religious practices. True faith will result in the people living [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#) lives. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

**Part 3: Important Translation Issues****Why does Micah 1:10-16 sound unusual?**

This passage sounds unusual because of its construction in Hebrew, called a play on words. The names of the cities are used to describe their destruction. “Lachish will be lashed” is an example of this type of construction. This is a poetic element that might not correspond to the actual way they will be punished.

**What does a translator need to know before translating Micah?**

Micah does not frequently explain the historical context of his prophecies. This may result in the translator’s failure to understand implicit information unless they have a solid understanding of the time of Micah’s ministry. It is therefore suggested that translators have a good understanding of the history of the kingdoms of Israel and Judah. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### How do I translate passages where the speaker or addressee is not mentioned explicitly?

Micah often fails to mention who is speaking or who is being addressed. The context of the quote will often help the reader to understand who is speaking or being addressed. It is acceptable to make this information explicit so the reader can more easily understand. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### How should the text of Micah be formatted?

The ULB tries to replicate the same poetic format as the Hebrew text. Many languages will be capable of replicating this but many languages will not be capable of this. The poetic portions of the text have been set apart through the use of indentation. With the exception of the first verse, the entire book is indented because the book is written as a series of poetic prophecies.

### List of translationAcademy Topics in Micah

- \* [Active or Passive](#) is found in: [01:06](#), [01:11](#), [01:13](#), [02:09](#), [03:05](#), [03:12](#), [04:01](#), [04:06](#), [04:09](#), [04:11](#), [06:16](#), [07:03](#), [07:10](#), [07:11](#)
- \* [Apostrophe](#) is found in: [01:02](#), [05:02](#)
- \* [Doublet](#) is found in: [04:02](#), [05:02](#), [05:08](#)
- \* [Ellipsis](#) is found in: [05:04](#)
- \* [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) is found in: [01:06](#), [01:11](#), [05:10](#)
- \* [Hyperbole](#) is found in: [07:01](#)
- \* [Idiom](#) is found in: [01:01](#), [03:04](#), [07:16](#)
- \* [Inclusive “We”](#) is found in: [05:04](#), [07:19](#)
- \* [Litotes](#) is found in: [05:06](#)
- \* [Metaphor](#) is found in: [01:02](#), [01:08](#), [02:03](#), [02:06](#), [03:01](#), [03:05](#), [03:09](#), [04:01](#), [04:06](#), [04:13](#), [05:04](#), [05:06](#), [06:09](#), [07:07](#), [07:09](#), [07:14](#), [07:19](#)
- \* [Metonymy](#) is found in: [01:01](#), [03:05](#), [03:09](#), [05:04](#), [07:07](#), [07:09](#), [07:10](#), [07:19](#)
- \* [Parallelism](#) is found in: [01:05](#), [03:08](#), [04:02](#), [06:06](#), [06:11](#), [07:16](#)
- \* [Personification](#) is found in: [06:01](#)
- \* [Rhetorical Question](#) is found in: [01:05](#), [02:03](#), [02:06](#), [03:01](#), [03:09](#), [04:09](#), [06:03](#), [06:06](#), [06:11](#), [07:10](#), [07:18](#)
- \* [Simile](#) is found in: [01:02](#), [01:08](#), [03:12](#), [04:11](#), [05:06](#), [05:08](#), [07:01](#), [07:03](#)
- \* [Synecdoche](#) is found in: [04:04](#), [06:09](#), [07:03](#), [07:10](#)
- \* [Forms of You](#) is found in: [07:19](#)
- \* [How to Translate Names](#) is found in: [01:01](#), [01:08](#), [01:11](#), [01:13](#), [01:15](#), [05:02](#), [05:06](#), [06:03](#), [06:16](#)

**List of translationWords in Micah**

- \* Aaron is found in: 06:03
- \* abomination, abominable is found in: 06:09
- \* Abraham, Abram is found in: 07:19
- \* adversary, enemy is found in: 02:03, 02:06, 04:09, 05:08, 07:05, 07:07, 07:10
- \* afflict, affliction is found in: 04:06
- \* Ahab is found in: 06:16
- \* Ahaz is found in: 01:01
- \* angry, anger is found in: 02:06, 05:12
- \* anoint, anointed is found in: 06:13
- \* arrogant is found in: 02:03
- \* Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth is found in: 05:12
- \* assembly, assemble is found in: 02:03
- \* Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire is found in: 05:04, 05:06, 07:11
- \* avenge, revenge, vengeance is found in: 05:12
- \* Babylon, Babylonian is found in: 04:09
- \* Balaam is found in: 06:03
- \* Bashan is found in: 07:14
- \* Bethlehem, Ephrathah is found in: 05:02
- \* bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 02:09
- \* blood is found in: 03:09
- \* bow, bow down is found in: 06:06
- \* bribe is found in: 03:09, 07:03
- \* bronze is found in: 04:13
- \* brother is found in: 05:02
- \* burnt offering, offering by fire is found in: 06:06
- \* Carmel, Mount Carmel is found in: 07:14
- \* cast out, drive out, throw out is found in: 02:09, 04:06
- \* chariot is found in: 01:13, 05:10
- \* children, child is found in: 01:15, 05:02
- \* clan is found in: 02:03, 05:02

- \* compassion, compassionate is found in: 07:19
- \* counsel, counselor, advice, advisor is found in: 04:09
- \* covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love is found in: 07:18, 07:19
- \* cow, calf, bull, cattle is found in: 06:06
- \* darkness is found in: 03:05, 07:07
- \* deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive is found in: 06:11
- \* declare, declaration is found in: 03:08
- \* defile, be defiled is found in: 04:11
- \* dishonor, dishonorable is found in: 07:05
- \* divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer is found in: 03:05, 03:09, 05:12
- \* eagle is found in: 01:15
- \* earth, earthly is found in: 04:13, 05:04, 06:01
- \* Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 06:03, 07:11, 07:14
- \* enslave, in bondage is found in: 06:03
- \* everlasting, eternal, eternity is found in: 05:02
- \* Euphrates River is found in: 07:11
- \* evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 02:01, 02:03, 03:01, 03:04, 03:09, 06:09
- \* exalt, exaltation is found in: 04:01
- \* exile, the Exile is found in: 01:15
- \* face is found in: 03:04
- \* false god, foreign god, god, goddess is found in: 04:04
- \* fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 04:04, 07:16
- \* fig is found in: 04:04
- \* fire is found in: 01:02
- \* firstborn is found in: 06:06
- \* flock, herd is found in: 02:12, 04:06, 05:04, 05:08, 07:14
- \* forever is found in: 02:09, 04:04, 04:06, 07:18
- \* foundation, founded is found in: 01:06, 06:01
- \* fruit, fruitful is found in: 06:06, 07:11
- \* gate, gate bar is found in: 01:08, 01:11, 02:12
- \* Gath is found in: 01:08, 01:13

- \* gift is found in: 01:06
- \* Gilead is found in: 07:14
- \* Gilgal is found in: 06:03
- \* glean, gleaning is found in: 07:01
- \* God is found in: 04:02, 04:04, 05:02, 05:04, 06:06, 07:07, 07:10, 07:16, 07:18
- \* good, goodness is found in: 02:06, 03:01, 06:06
- \* grape is found in: 06:13, 07:01
- \* hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 04:09, 05:06, 05:08, 05:12, 07:03, 07:16
- \* harvest is found in: 07:01
- \* head is found in: 02:12
- \* Hezekiah is found in: 01:01
- \* high places is found in: 01:02, 01:05
- \* holy, holiness is found in: 01:02
- \* Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 02:06, 03:08
- \* horse is found in: 01:13, 05:10
- \* house is found in: 01:05, 02:01, 02:06, 03:01, 03:09, 04:01, 04:02, 06:03, 06:09, 06:16
- \* humble, humility is found in: 06:06
- \* idol, idolatrous is found in: 01:06
- \* image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure is found in: 01:06, 05:12
- \* inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir is found in: 02:01, 07:14, 07:18
- \* iniquity is found in: 02:01, 03:09, 07:19
- \* innocent is found in: 06:11
- \* Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 01:05, 01:13, 01:15, 02:12, 03:01, 03:08, 03:09, 05:01, 05:02, 06:01
- \* I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh is found in: 04:06, 06:03
- \* Jacob, Israel is found in: 01:05, 02:06, 02:12, 03:01, 03:08, 03:09, 04:02, 05:06, 05:08, 07:19
- \* Jerusalem is found in: 01:01, 01:05, 01:08, 01:11, 03:09, 03:12, 04:02, 04:06, 05:01
- \* Jotham is found in: 01:01
- \* Judah is found in: 01:01, 01:08, 05:02
- \* judge, judgment is found in: 03:09, 04:02, 07:09
- \* judge is found in: 07:03
- \* just, justice, justly is found in: 03:01, 03:08, 03:09, 06:06, 07:09

- \* king is found in: 01:01, 01:13, 02:12, 04:09, 06:03
- \* kingdom is found in: 04:06
- \* Judah, kingdom of Judah is found in: 01:05
- \* labor pains, in labor is found in: 04:09, 05:02
- \* lament, lamentation is found in: 01:08, 02:03
- \* last day, last days, latter days is found in: 04:01
- \* law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 04:02
- \* light is found in: 02:01, 07:07, 07:09
- \* lion is found in: 05:08
- \* Lord is found in: 04:13
- \* Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God is found in: 01:02
- \* lots, casting lots is found in: 02:03
- \* love is found in: 03:01, 07:18
- \* majesty is found in: 05:04
- \* Micah is found in: 01:01, 06:01
- \* mighty, might is found in: 03:08
- \* mind is found in: 06:03
- \* miracle, wonder, sign is found in: 07:14
- \* Miriam is found in: 06:03
- \* Moab, Moabite, Moabites is found in: 06:03
- \* mock, ridicule, scoff at is found in: 06:16
- \* Moses is found in: 06:03
- \* mourn, mourning is found in: 01:08
- \* name is found in: 04:04, 06:09
- \* nation is found in: 04:02, 04:06, 04:11, 05:08, 05:12, 07:16
- \* neighbor is found in: 07:05
- \* oil is found in: 06:06, 06:13
- \* olive is found in: 06:13
- \* peace, peaceful is found in: 05:04
- \* people group, peoples, the people, a people is found in: 01:02, 02:12, 04:01, 04:02, 04:04, 04:13, 05:01, 05:06, 05:08



- \* people of God, my people is found in: 02:03, 02:09, 03:01, 03:05, 05:02, 06:01, 06:03, 06:16, 07:11, 07:14
- \* perish, perishing, perishable is found in: 04:09, 07:01
- \* pillar, column is found in: 05:12
- \* possess, possession is found in: 01:15, 04:13
- \* power, powers is found in: 02:01, 03:08, 07:16
- \* priest, priesthood is found in: 03:09
- \* proclaim, proclamation is found in: 06:09
- \* prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess is found in: 02:06, 02:09, 03:05, 03:09
- \* prostitute, harlot, whore is found in: 01:06
- \* punish, punishment is found in: 07:03
- \* raise, rise, risen, arise, arose is found in: 05:04
- \* reap, reaper is found in: 06:13
- \* rebel, rebellious, rebellion is found in: 01:05
- \* reign is found in: 04:06
- \* rejoice is found in: 07:07
- \* remnant is found in: 02:12, 04:06, 05:06, 05:08, 07:18
- \* reproach is found in: 02:06
- \* righteous, righteousness is found in: 06:03
- \* robe is found in: 02:06
- \* rod is found in: 05:01, 07:14
- \* ruin, ruins is found in: 01:06, 02:03, 03:12, 06:13
- \* ruler, rulers, rule is found in: 03:01, 03:04, 03:09, 05:02, 07:03
- \* salvation is found in: 07:07
- \* Samaria, Samaritan is found in: 01:01, 01:05, 01:06
- \* save, safe is found in: 05:08
- \* serpent, snake, viper is found in: 07:16
- \* shame, shameful, ashamed is found in: 01:11, 03:05, 07:10, 07:16
- \* sheep, ram, ewe is found in: 02:12, 05:08, 06:06
- \* shepherd, to shepherd is found in: 05:04, 07:14
- \* sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 01:05, 01:13, 03:08, 06:06, 06:13, 07:09, 07:18, 07:19
- \* sow, sower, plant is found in: 06:13

- \* **spear** is found in: 04:02
- \* **spirit, spiritual** is found in: 02:09
- \* **stone, stoning** is found in: 01:06
- \* **strong drink** is found in: 02:09
- \* **stronghold, fortress, fortified** is found in: 05:04, 05:10
- \* **sword** is found in: 04:02, 05:06, 06:13
- \* **temple** is found in: 01:02, 03:12
- \* **testimony, testify** is found in: 06:03
- \* **thresh, threshing** is found in: 04:11, 04:13
- \* **tongue** is found in: 06:11
- \* **transgress, transgression** is found in: 01:13, 03:08, 06:06, 07:18
- \* **true, truth, come true** is found in: 07:19
- \* **trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness** is found in: 07:05
- \* **unclean** is found in: 02:09
- \* **unjust, unjustly, injustice** is found in: 04:13
- \* **vine** is found in: 04:04
- \* **vineyard** is found in: 01:06, 07:01
- \* **vision** is found in: 03:05
- \* **voice** is found in: 06:01, 06:09
- \* **walk** is found in: 02:03, 02:06, 04:02, 04:04, 06:06, 06:16
- \* **watchtower, tower** is found in: 04:06
- \* **water, waters** is found in: 01:02
- \* **wine, wineskin, new wine** is found in: 02:09, 06:13
- \* **wise, wisdom** is found in: 06:09
- \* **witness, eyewitness** is found in: 01:02
- \* **woe** is found in: 02:01, 07:01
- \* **word** is found in: 02:06, 04:02
- \* **word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture** is found in: 01:01
- \* **works, deeds, work, acts** is found in: 02:06, 03:04, 06:16
- \* **worship** is found in: 05:12
- \* **wrath, fury** is found in: 05:12

\* Yahweh is found in: 01:02, 01:11, 02:03, 02:06, 02:12, 03:04, 03:05, 03:09, 04:01, 04:02, 04:09, 04:11, 04:13, 05:04, 05:06, 05:10, 06:01, 06:06, 06:09, 07:07, 07:09, 07:10, 07:16

\* Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host is found in: 04:04

\* Zion, Mount Zion is found in: 01:13, 03:09, 04:02, 04:06, 04:09, 04:11

## **Micah 1 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Micah is written mainly in a poetic form. Most of the prophets wrote to either the Northern Kingdom or the Southern Kingdom. Micah wrote to both of them at times without clear distinction, as he did in this chapter.

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **City Names**

This passage sounds unusual in English because of its construction in Hebrew. It contains several “puns” or “plays on words.” The names of the cities are used to describe their destruction. “Lachish will be lashed” is an example of this type of construction. This poetic element might metaphors describing the actual way they will be punished. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Micah 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Micah](#)

## Micah 1:1

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave Micah, who was from Moresheth in Judah, these messages in visions about Samaria and Jerusalem during the time when Jotham, and then Ahaz, and then Hezekiah were the kings of Judah.

### ULB:

**1** <sup>1</sup> This is the word of Yahweh that came to Micah the Morashtite in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, the word that he saw concerning Samaria and Jerusalem.

### translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Micah
- Jotham
- Ahaz
- Hezekiah
- king
- Judah
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Jerusalem

### translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh that came** - “the word that Yahweh God spoke” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Yahweh** - This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.
- **the Morashtite** - This means he is from Moresheth which is a town in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah** - “when Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah were kings of Judah”
- **the word that he saw concerning Samaria and Jerusalem** - AT: “the vision that he saw concerning the people of Samaria and Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)

- Micah 01 General Notes
- **Micah 01 Translation Questions**

**Micah 1:2-4****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> You people everywhere on the earth, pay attention to this.

Yahweh our God is accusing you from his holy temple in heaven.

<sup>3</sup> He will come down from heaven

and walk over the high places where you worship idols.

<sup>4</sup> It will be as though the mountains will melt under his feet

as wax melts in front of a fire,

and as water disappears

when it rushes down into a valley.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> Listen, all you peoples.

Listen, earth, and all that is in you.

Let the Lord Yahweh be a witness against you,

the Lord from his holy temple.

<sup>3</sup> Look, Yahweh comes out of his place;

he will come down and tread

on the high places on the earth.

<sup>4</sup> The mountains will melt under him;

the valleys will break apart

like wax before fire,

like waters that are poured down a steep place.

**translationWords:**

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- witness, eyewitness
- holy, holiness
- temple
- Yahweh
- high places
- fire
- water, waters

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Micah 1:2-7 is about God's judgment on Samaria.
- **Listen, all you peoples. Listen, earth, and all that is in you** - This begins Micah's prophecy. Both of these sentences mean the same thing and emphasize that everyone on earth is to listen. Micah speaks as if all the people of the earth were there listening to him. (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Parallelism](#) )
- **he will come down and tread on the high places on the earth** - AT: he will completely destroy the high places on the earth as if he were crushing them with his feet" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The mountains will melt under him; the valleys will break apart like wax before fire, like waters that are poured down a steep place.** - This means when God comes to destroy the pagan shrines nothing will be able to stop him. (See: [Simile](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 01 Translation Questions](#)



**Micah 1:5****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Those things will happen because of the terrible sins that the people of Israel, the descendants of Jacob, have committed.

But it was the people of the city of Samaria who persuaded all the people of Israel to sin.

And it was because the people of Jerusalem set up altars to worship their gods

that the other people of Judah thought they should also worship idols on the hilltops.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> All this is because of the rebellion of Jacob,  
and because of the sins of the house of Israel.

What was the reason for Jacob's rebellion?

Was it not Samaria?

What was the reason for high places of Judah?

Was it not Jerusalem?

**translationWords:**

- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- Jacob, Israel
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- high places
- Jerusalem

**translationNotes:**

- **All this is because of the rebellion of Jacob, and because of the sins of the house of Israel**  
- These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh is acting because of the sins of both the northern and southern kingdoms. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **All this is** - “The Lord will come and judge”
- **What was the reason for Jacob’s rebellion? Was it not Samaria?** - Here “Jacob” refers to the northern kingdom of Israel. Micah uses questions to emphasize that the people of Samaria are the reason God will come to judge the kingdom of Israel. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **What was the reason for high places of Judah? Was it not Jerusalem?** - Micah uses questions to emphasize that the people of Jerusalem are the reason God is coming to judge the kingdom of Judah. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 1:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh says this: "I will cause Samaria to become a heap of rubble;

it will be only a field for planting vineyards.

I will cause the stones of its buildings to roll down into the valley.

I will destroy the buildings down to their foundations.

<sup>7</sup> I will make others smash the idols in Samaria to pieces.

The gifts given to prostitutes at the temples of their idols will be burned in fire.

Because people paid prostitutes there,

their enemies will take away those idols and sell them to pay prostitutes in other countries.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> "I will make Samaria a heap of ruins in the field,  
like a place for planting vineyards.

I will pull her building stones into the valley;

I will uncover her foundations.

<sup>7</sup> All her carved figures will be crushed to pieces;  
and all the gifts to her will be burned up.

All her idols I will make a ruin.

For from the gifts to her prostitution she gathered them,  
and as a prostitute's pay they will return."

**translationWords:**

- Samaria, Samaritan
- ruin, ruins
- vineyard
- stone, stoning
- foundation, founded
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- gift
- idol, idolatrous

- ruin, ruins
- prostitute, harlot, whore

**translationNotes:**

- **I will make** - Here “I” refers to Yahweh.
- **will be crushed to pieces ... will be burned up** - “I will crush to pieces ... I will burn up”  
(See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I will pull her building stones** - Here “her” refers to the city of Samaria.
- **For from the gifts to her prostitution she gathered them, and as a prostitute’s pay they will return** - Often worshiping idols included sleeping with a prostitute at the pagan temple.  
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Micah 1:8-10

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> Because Samaria will be destroyed, I will weep and wail.

I will walk around barefoot and naked.

I will howl like a jackal

and screech like an owl.

<sup>9</sup> I will lament because Samaria will be completely destroyed;

nothing can save that city.

But the same thing will happen to Judah.

It is as though the enemy army had already reached the city gates  
of Jerusalem,

the main city where my people live.

<sup>10</sup> Do not tell that to our enemies in the city of Gath in Philistia!

Do not cry, or the people there will find out what is happening.

Instead, just roll on the ground in Beth Leaphrah.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> For this reason I will lament and wail;

I will go barefoot and naked;

I will wail like the jackals

and mourn like owls.

<sup>9</sup> For her wound is incurable,

for it has come to Judah.

It has reached the gate of my people,

to Jerusalem.

<sup>10</sup> Do not tell about it in Gath;

do not weep at all.

At Beth Leaphrah I roll myself in the dust.

**translationWords:**

- lament, lamentation
- mourn, mourning
- Judah
- gate, gate bar
- Jerusalem
- Gath

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Micah 1:8-16 is about God's judgment on Judah.
- **I will lament** - Here "I" refers to Micah.
- **I will go barefoot and naked** - This is a sign of extreme mourning and distress.
- **naked** - Most likely, Micah was not entirely naked. He was probably wearing a loincloth.
- **I will wail like the jackals and mourn like owls** - These are animals that are known for their loud and harsh cries. And they are found in wastelands. AT: "You shall wail and mourn like the animals of the night" (See: [Simile](#))
- **For her wound is incurable** - Here "her" refers to the city of Samaria. This means nothing can stop the enemy army that is coming to destroy the people of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **for it has come to Judah** - Here "it" refers to the "wound," that is, to the army that God will use to punish Samaria.
- **Beth Leaphrah** - You may want to make a footnote saying, "The name of this city means 'house of dust.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **I roll myself in the dust** - People under God's judgment are expressing their grief in a strong way.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 1:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> You people who live in Shaphir,  
       naked and ashamed, you will be taken to another country.  
 You people in Beth Ezel should mourn,  
       because no one from Zaanah will go out to help you.  
<sup>12</sup> The people of Maroth  
       are anxiously waiting for good things to happen to them.  
 But I will make terrible things to happen to them,  
       and they will soon happen at the gates of Jerusalem.”

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Pass by, inhabitants of Shaphir,  
 in nakedness and shame.  
 The inhabitants of Zaanah do not come out.  
 Beth Ezel mourns,  
 for their protection is taken away.  
<sup>12</sup> For the inhabitants of Maroth wait anxiously for good news,  
 because disaster has come down from Yahweh  
 to the gates of Jerusalem.

**translationWords:**

- shame, shameful, ashamed
- Yahweh
- gate, gate bar
- Jerusalem

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - For the meanings of the names of villages and towns, you may want to include that information in a footnote.
- **Shaphir** - The name of this city sounds like one meaning “beautiful.” It contrasts with “nakedness and shame.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **in nakedness and shame** - Enemy armies often made their prisoners walk totally naked. And there was shame in being a conquered people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Zaanan** - The name of this city means “go out.” They are too afraid to go out and help.
- **Beth Ezel** - The name of this city means “house of taking away.”
- **for their protection is taken away** - AT: “for I have taken away everything that might protect them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Maroth** - The name of this city means “bitterness.”
- **because disaster has come down from Yahweh** - “Disaster” is an important word in Micah that will reoccur.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 01 Translation Questions](#)



**Micah 1:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> You people in the city of Lachish,

hitch your horses to pull the chariots in which you can ride to flee  
from your enemies.

The Israelite people rebelled against Yahweh,  
and you imitated them,

and that caused the people of Jerusalem to start sinning, too.

<sup>14</sup> You people of Judah, send a farewell gift to the people of Moresheth,  
because their enemies will soon destroy it.

The kings of Israel will soon find out that the people of the town of Achzib  
will disappoint them.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Harness the chariot to the team of horses, inhabitants of Lachish.

You, Lachish, were the beginning of sin for the daughter of Zion,  
for the transgressions of Israel were found in you.

<sup>14</sup> So you will give a parting gift to Moresheth Gath;  
the town of Achzib will disappoint the kings of Israel.

**translationWords:**

- chariot
- horse
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Zion, Mount Zion
- transgress, transgression
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Gath
- king

**translationNotes:**

- **Lachish** - There is wordplay here as Lachish sounds like “to the chariots” in Hebrew. The people are hitching their chariots to flee, not fight. Lachish was second to Jerusalem in importance in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **the daughter of Zion** - The “daughter” of a city means the people of the city. Alternate translations: “the people of Zion” or “the people who live in Zion.”
- **for the transgressions of Israel were found in you** - AT: “for you disobeyed like the people of Israel did” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Moresbeth Gath** - You may want to add a footnote saying “The name ‘Moresbeth’ means ‘to depart’ and is similar in sound to the word for ‘fiancee.’” It is like Moresbeth is the bride that Assyria takes and the “parting gifts” are the dowry. Moresbeth Gath was Micah’s home village.
- **Achzib** - You may want to add a footnote saying “The name of this town sounds almost the same as the Hebrew expression for ‘deceitful thing.’”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 1:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> You people of Mareshah,

Yahweh will soon send someone to conquer your town.

It will be necessary for the great leaders of Israel to go and hide in the cave near Adullam.

<sup>16</sup> You people of Judah, shave your heads and go into mourning,  
because the children whom you love will soon go into exile.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> I will again bring a conqueror to you,  
inhabitants of Mareshah;  
the splendor of Israel will come to Adullam.

<sup>16</sup> Shave your head  
and cut off your hair  
for the children in whom you delight.  
Make yourself as bald as eagles,  
for your children will go into exile from you.

**translationWords:**

- possess, possession
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- children, child
- eagle
- exile, the Exile

**translationNotes:**

- **I will again bring** - Here “I” refers to Yahweh.
- **Mareshah** - You may want to make a footnote saying, “There is a play-on-words here with the name of this village and the Hebrew word for ‘conquerer.’” This term was used in Israel’s conquering Canaan; now Israel will be conquered. This village is probably near Micah’s home village of Moresheth Gath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Adullam** - This refers to a royal city of the Philistines. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **Shave your head and cut off your hair** - Shaving one's head was a sign of mourning for the Israelites.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Micah 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter continues using poetic forms in communicating that people who take advantage of others are guilty of sin and injustice. (See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [unjust](#), [unjustly](#), [injustice](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Context

Micah does not frequently explain the historical context of his prophecies. This may result in the translator failing to understand implicit information. Additional research may be needed regarding the time period of Micah's ministry. Therefore, translators have a good understanding of the history of the kingdoms of Israel and Judah. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Links:

- [Micah 02:01 Notes](#)

**Micah 2:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Terrible things will happen to you who lie awake at night,  
planning to do wicked things.  
Then you get up at dawn, and you do those things  
as soon as you are able to do them.

<sup>2</sup> You want fields that belong to other people,  
so you seize them;  
you also take their houses.  
You cheat people to get their homes,  
taking away the property that belongs to their families.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> Woe to those who plan iniquity,  
to those who plan on their beds to do evil.  
In the morning light they do it  
because they have power.

<sup>2</sup> They desire fields and seize them;  
they desire houses and take them.  
They oppress a man and his house,  
a man and his inheritance.

**translationWords:**

- woe
- iniquity
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- light
- power, powers
- house
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Now in Micah 2:1-11, the focus leaves the towns being judged to the leaders in Israel who are taking advantage of the poor and not following God's commands.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 2:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Therefore, this is what Yahweh says:

”I will cause you people of Israel to experience disasters,  
and you will not be able to escape from them.

You will no longer walk around proudly,  
because when that happens, it will be a time of much trouble for  
you.

<sup>4</sup> At that time, your enemies will make fun of you rich people;  
they will ridicule you by singing this sad song about you:

’We Israelites are completely ruined;  
Yahweh is taking our land from us,  
and he will give it to those who capture us.’”

<sup>5</sup> So when it is the time for the land to be given back to you people who  
belong to Yahweh,  
there will be no one alive among you rich families to receive back  
any of that land.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Therefore Yahweh says this,  
”Look, I am about to bring disaster against this clan,  
from which you will not remove your necks.

You will not walk arrogantly,  
for it will be an evil time.

<sup>4</sup> In that day your enemies will sing a song about you,  
and lament with a wailing lamentation.

They will sing, ’We Israelites are completely ruined;  
Yahweh changes the territory of my people.  
How can he remove it from me?

He portions out our fields to traitors!’”

<sup>5</sup> Therefore, you rich people will have no descendants to divide up the terri-  
tory by lot  
in the assembly of Yahweh.



**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- clan
- walk
- arrogant
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- adversary, enemy
- lament, lamentation
- ruin, ruins
- people of God, my people
- lots, casting lots
- assembly, assemble

**translationNotes:**

- **this clan** - This “clan” refers to the entire community of Israel, whose rich people are oppressing the poor. The sins of the leaders are coming back on the whole nation.
- **from which you will not remove your necks** - Yahweh means his punishment is like a yoke around their necks. It is something that will bring down the pride of the rich. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **lament with a wailing lamentation** - “they will cry loudly”
- **How can he remove it from me?** - The enemy uses a question in their song to express the surprise the rich leaders of Israel felt because God had taken their land and given it to someone else just as they had taken the land from the poor. AT: “He has taken it from me!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Therefore, you rich people will have no descendants to divide up the territory by lot in the assembly of Yahweh.** - Those who took land from the poor will not receive the inheritance they denied others.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 2:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> The people who heard me say that replied to me,

”Do not prophesy such things!

Do not say that Yahweh is going to humiliate us by causing us to experience disasters!”

<sup>7</sup> But you people talk like that!

You say that Yahweh never gets angry,  
and that he never really punishes us.”

Of course, what I say certainly helps those who live in the right way.

<sup>8</sup> But Yahweh says,

”Recently my people have been acting toward me like an enemy.

You rich people refuse to return the coats of those who have borrowed money from you,

the coats they gave you to promise that they would repay their debts.

You take their coats without warning, surprising them as much as soldiers returning from war would be surprised by attacks instead of safety at home.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> “Do not prophesy,”

they say.

”They must not prophesy these things;  
reproaches must not come.”

<sup>7</sup> Should it really be said, house of Jacob,

”Is the Spirit of Yahweh angry?

Are these really his deeds?”

Do not my words do good

to anyone who walks uprightly?

<sup>8</sup> Lately my people have risen up like an enemy.

You strip the robe, the garment, from those who pass by unsuspectingly,  
as soldiers return from war to what they think is safety.

**translationWords:**

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- reproach
- house
- Jacob, Israel
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- Yahweh
- angry, anger
- works, deeds, work, acts
- word
- good, goodness
- walk
- adversary, enemy
- robe

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Micah 2:6-11 addresses prophets who have not preached correctly, ones who have rejected Micah, and more ways the rich have abused their power.
- **they say** - “the people of Israel say”
- **They must not prophesy** - “The prophets must not prophesy”
- **Is the Spirit of Yahweh angry? Are these really his deeds?** - The people use questions to emphasize that they have misunderstood and do not believe God would really punish them. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Do not my words do good to anyone who walks uprightly?** - Micah uses a question to teach the people. AT: “My message is good to those who are concerned with doing what is right.”
- **my people** - Here “my” refers to Yahweh.
- **You strip the robe, the garment, from those who pass by unsuspectingly** - Possible meanings are 1) Micah means the wicked rich people are literally stealing robes from the poor, but this is unlikely. Or 2) Micah is referring to creditors keeping the outer garments of the poor who come to borrow money and give the garment as assurance they will repay. According to the law in Exodus, they were to return the garment before nightfall because it might be the only thing the poor man has to keep warm at night. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 2:9-11****UDB:**

- <sup>9</sup> You have forced women to leave their nice homes,  
and you have stolen from their children forever the blessings that  
I wanted to give them.
- <sup>10</sup> So get up and leave here!  
This is not a place where you can rest and be safe,  
because you have defiled it.  
I will make sure it will be completely destroyed.
- <sup>11</sup> You people want a prophet who will lie to you,  
saying, 'I will preach that you should drink plenty of wine and other  
alcoholic drinks!'  
That is the kind of prophet who would please you."

**ULB:**

- <sup>9</sup> You drive the women belonging to my people from their pleasant houses;  
you take my blessing from their young children forever.
- <sup>10</sup> Get up and leave,  
for this is not a place where you can stay,  
because of its uncleanness;  
it is destroyed with complete destruction.
- <sup>11</sup> If someone comes to you in a spirit of falsehood and lies and says,  
"I will prophesy to you about wine and strong drink,"  
he would be considered to be a prophet for this people.

**translationWords:**

- cast out, drive out, throw out
- people of God, my people
- bless, blessed, blessing
- forever
- unclean
- spirit, spiritual

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- strong drink

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to the wicked rich people in Israel.
- **you take my blessing from their young children forever** - This refers, in general, to blessings God has given to his people. It might refer to 1) being landowners in Israel, 2) a promising future or 3) to the children's fathers, farmers who worked hard to establish the nation.
- **it is destroyed with complete destruction** - AT: "I will completely destroy it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he would be considered** - AT: "you would consider him"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 2:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> "But some day, you descendants of Jacob, I will bring back from exile the Israelite people who have survived.

I will gather you together  
like a shepherd gathers his sheep into a pen,  
and there will be many of you in your land.

<sup>13</sup> Your leader will enable them to leave the countries where they have been exiled;

he will lead them out of the gates of their enemies' cities,  
back to your own country.

Your king will lead them;  
it is I, Yahweh, who will be their king!"

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> I will surely assemble all of you, Jacob.

I will surely gather the remnant of Israel.

I will bring them together like sheep in a fold,  
like a flock in the midst of their pasture.

There will be a loud noise because of the multitude of people.

<sup>13</sup> Someone who breaks open their way for them will go ahead of them.

They break through the gate and go out;

their king will pass on before them.

Yahweh will be at their head.

**translationWords:**

- Jacob, Israel
- remnant
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- sheep, ram, ewe
- flock, herd
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [head](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking. At the end of this chapter, Yahweh shows himself to be a shepherd who protects his people. He may especially be addressing those in Jerusalem who have returned from Assyria.
- **Someone who breaks open their way ... Yahweh will be at their head.** - This is a picture of the King leading his people out of an enclosed city.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Micah 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Justice

An unjust society was considered sinful. It was considered to be against the law of Moses. If these kingdoms did not have justice, they were not obedient to Yahweh. (See: [unjust](#), [unjustly](#), [injustice](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#) and [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphors

There are vivid pictures used in this chapter which show how the leaders of the people were treating the Israelites. These situations are absurd unless taken as a metaphor. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Micah 03:01 Notes](#)



**Micah 3:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then I said, "You Israelite leaders, listen to what I say!

You should certainly know what things are right to do  
and what things are wrong,

<sup>2</sup> but you hate what is good  
and love what is evil.

You act like butchers:  
it is as though you strip the skin off my people  
and tear the flesh from their bones.

<sup>3</sup> It is as though you chop them into pieces like meat to be cooked in a pot.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup> I said, "Now listen,  
you leaders of Jacob  
and rulers of the house of Israel:  
Is it not right for you to understand justice?

<sup>2</sup> You who hate good  
and love evil,  
you who tear off their skin,  
their flesh from their bones—

<sup>3</sup> you who also eat the flesh of my people,  
and tear their skin off,  
break their bones,  
and chop them in pieces,  
just like meat for a pot,  
just like meat in a cauldron.

**translationWords:**

- Jacob, Israel
- ruler, rulers, rule
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- just, justice, justly
- good, goodness
- love
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- people of God, my people

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Chapter 3 focuses on the corrupt leaders in Israel.
- **I said** - Here “I” refers to Micah.
- **Is it not right for you to understand justice?** - Micah uses a question to scold the leaders because they were not protecting the people or treating them fairly. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **you who tear off their skin, their flesh from their bones ... just like meat in a cauldron** - Micah uses this terrible imagery of a butcher cutting up animals into meat to emphasize how upset God is with the leaders because of how cruel they are to those they should be protecting. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 3:4****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then, when you have troubles, you plead to Yahweh to help you,  
but he will not answer you.  
At that time, he will turn his face away from you  
because of the evil things that you have done.”

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then you rulers will cry out to Yahweh,  
but he will not answer you.  
He will hide his face from you at that time,  
because you have done evil deeds.”

**translationWords:**

- ruler, rulers, rule
- Yahweh
- face
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- works, deeds, work, acts

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Micah continues speaking.
- **cry out to Yahweh** - “shout to Yahweh for help”
- **He will hide his face from you** - This means God will not hear their cries. They would not hear the cries of the poor, and so they receive the same treatment from God. (See: **Idiom**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 3:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> This is what Yahweh says

about your false prophets who are deceiving the people:

”If someone gives them food,

those prophets say that things will go well for him.

But they declare that I will punish anyone who does not give them food.

<sup>6</sup> So now it is as though night will descend on you prophets;

you will not receive any more visions.

It is as though the sun will set for you;

the time when you are greatly honored will end.

<sup>7</sup> Then you seers will be disgraced;

you will cover your faces because you will be ashamed,

because when you ask me what will happen, there will be no answer from me.”

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh says this about the prophets

who make my people wander,

”For those who feed them

they announce, ‘There will be prosperity.’

But for those who put nothing in their mouths,

they start a war against him.

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, it will be night for you with no vision for you;

it will be dark so that you will do no divination.

The sun will go down on the prophets,

and the day will be dark on them.

<sup>7</sup> The seers will be put to shame,

and the diviners will be confused.

All of them will cover their lips,

for there is no answer from me.”

**translationWords:**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [vision](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Micah continues to speak judgment against false prophets.
- **it will be night for you ... the day will be dark on them** - Yahweh is saying in 3:6 these false prophets will no longer receive God’s message to the people of Israel. Prophets sometimes got messages from God through visions, or dreams at night. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The seers will be put to shame, and the diviners will be confused** - “I will cause the seers to be ashamed, and I will confuse the diviners” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **All of them will cover their lips** - “They shall no longer speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **for there is no answer from me** - This means God will be silent as part of their punishment.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 3:8****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> But as for me, I am full of God's power,  
power from the Spirit of Yahweh.  
I am just and strong  
and declare to the Israelite people  
that they have sinned and rebelled against Yahweh.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> But as for me, I am full of power by the Spirit of Yahweh,  
and am full of justice and might,  
to declare to Jacob his transgression,  
and to Israel his sin.

**translationWords:**

- power, powers
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- just, justice, justly
- mighty, might
- declare, declaration
- Jacob, Israel
- transgress, transgression
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

**translationNotes:**

- **But as for me** - The "me" here refers to Micah, a true prophet, setting himself apart from the false prophets.
- **I am full of power by the Spirit of Yahweh, and am full of justice and might** - The Spirit of Yahweh has chosen to give Micah power, justice, and might in a strong, special way. AT: "the Spirit of Yahweh has filled me with power, justice, and might" or "the Spirit of Yahweh has granted me power, justice, and might"
- **to declare to Jacob his transgression, and to Israel his sin** - Both of these phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that both the people of both the northern and southern kingdoms have sinned. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 3:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> You leaders of the people of Israel, listen to this:

You hate it when people do what is just,  
and when people say what is true,  
you say it is false.

<sup>10</sup> It is as though you are building houses in Jerusalem on foundations  
that consist of murdering people and doing what is corrupt.

<sup>11</sup> Your leaders make favorable decisions only if they receive bribes.

Your priests teach people only if those people pay them well.

Your false prophets require people to pay them to tell people what  
will happen to them in the future.

Those prophets say, "Yahweh is telling us what we should say,  
and we say that we will not experience any disasters."

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Now listen to this,  
you leaders of the house of Jacob,  
and rulers of the house of Israel,  
you who detest justice,  
and pervert everything right.

<sup>10</sup> You build Zion with blood  
and Jerusalem with iniquity.

<sup>11</sup> Your leaders judge for a bribe,  
your priests teach for a price,  
and your prophets do divination for money.

Yet you rely on Yahweh and say,

"Is not Yahweh with us?

No evil will come on us."



**translationWords:**

- house
- Jacob, Israel
- ruler, rulers, rule
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- just, justice, justly
- Zion, Mount Zion
- blood
- Jerusalem
- iniquity
- judge, judgment
- bribe
- priest, priesthood
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness

**translationNotes:**

- **You build Zion with blood and Jerusalem with iniquity** - The rich were building themselves beautiful homes often at the expense and mistreatment of the poor. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **blood** - Here “blood” refers to murder. (See: [Metonymy](#) )
- **Is not Yahweh with us? No evil will come on us.** - Micah quotes the leaders who wrongly think Yahweh would not punish them for their sinful deeds. The Hebrew word for “evil” here is the same as for “disaster” in 2:3, a key word in the book. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Micah 3:12

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> Because of what you leaders do,

Mount Zion will be plowed like a field;  
it will become a heap of ruins.  
The top of the hill, where the temple is now, will be covered with  
trees.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> Therefore, because of you,  
Zion will be plowed like a field,  
Jerusalem will be a heap of rubble,  
and the hill of the temple will be like a forested hill.

### translationWords:

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [temple](#)

### translationNotes:

- **because of you** - Here “you” refers to the priests, prophets, and leaders of the previous verse.
- **Zion will be plowed like a field, Jerusalem will be a heap of rubble, and the hill of the temple will be like a forested hill.** - Micah means that Jerusalem will be completely destroyed. A large city with many people living there will become abandoned and grow over like a field or forest. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Zion will be plowed like a field** - After its destruction, Jerusalem will be available to plow. AT: “Other people will plow Zion like a field.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **and the hill of the temple will be like a forested hill.** - Not even the temple area will be spared. The leaders have corrupted it, and it will be destroyed too.

### Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 03 Translation Questions](#)

## **Micah 4 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter continues the poetic form to communicate that God will one day restore Israel. (See: [restore, restoration](#))

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Remnant**

Micah speaks about a future hope and a remnant who will return to their homeland. Verses 1-8 are a vision of the future when God will restore Israel to its former glory. These verses will give hope to those about to be removed from their homeland. (See: [remnant](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Micah 04:01 Notes](#)

**Micah 4:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh says that some day his temple will be on top of a mountain,  
 and that mountain will be the most important one on the earth;  
 it will be as though it was higher than all the hills,  
 and huge groups of people from all over the world will come there to worship.

**ULB:**

4 <sup>1</sup> But in the last days it will come about  
 that the mountain of Yahweh's house  
 will be established over the other mountains.  
 It will be exalted above the hills,  
 and peoples will stream to it.

**translationWords:**

- last day, last days, latter days
- Yahweh
- house
- exalt, exaltation
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

**translationNotes:**

- **the mountain of Yahweh's house will be established** - AT: "Yahweh will establish the mountain on which his temple is built" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **over the other mountains** - This means Mount Zion will be the most important of all the mountains. It might also mean that this mountain will be the highest in the world, not only in the area.
- **will be established over the other mountains** - AT: "will be honored more than any other mountain"
- **peoples will stream to it** - The people of the nations will go to the mountain of Yahweh like a stream flows. This mean that many people will go. AT: "the people of the nations will flow like a stream to it" or "the people of the nations will go to it" (See: **Metaphor**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 4:2-3****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> People from many nations will say to each other,

”Let us go to the mountain where Yahweh is,  
to the temple where we can worship the God whom Jacob wor-  
shipped.

There he will teach us how he wants us to conduct our lives,  
and we will do what he wants us to do.”

Mount Zion is the place where he will teach people;  
and people will go out from Jerusalem to tell others his messages.

<sup>3</sup> Yahweh will settle disputes between many different people and groups  
who are fighting against each other,  
and he will also settle disputes between powerful nations that are  
far away.

Then people will hammer their swords to cause them to become plow blades,  
and hammer their spears to cause them to become pruning knives.  
Armies of nations will no longer fight against armies of other nations,  
and they will no longer train men how to fight in wars.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> Many nations will go and say,  
”Come, let us go up to the mountain of Yahweh,  
to the house of the God of Jacob.

He will teach us his ways,  
and we will walk in his paths.”

For from Zion the law will go out,  
and the word of Yahweh from Jerusalem.

<sup>3</sup> He will judge among many peoples  
and will decide concerning numerous nations far away.

They will beat their swords into plowshares  
and their spears into pruning hooks.

Nation will not lift up sword against nation,  
nor will they train for war any longer.

**translationWords:**

- nation
- Yahweh
- house
- God
- Jacob, Israel
- walk
- Zion, Mount Zion
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- word
- Jerusalem
- judge, judgment
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- sword
- spear

**translationNotes:**

- **let us go up to the mountain of Yahweh, to the house of the God of Jacob** - Both the mountain and the house are references to the temple in Jerusalem. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **He will teach us his ways, and we will walk in his paths** - Here “his ways” and “his paths” refer to what God wants the people to do. Also, “walk” means they will obey what he says.
- **For from Zion the law will go out, and the word of Yahweh from Jerusalem** - Here the words “law” and “word” are speaking of the same thing. The nations of the world will hear God's law in Jerusalem.
- **plowshares** - A plowshare is a blade that people use to dig into soil so they can plant seeds.
- **They will beat their swords into plowshares and their spears into pruning hooks** - Both of these phrases mean that they will turn their weapons of war into tools that they will use to provide food. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **pruning hooks** - A pruning hook is used to cut off branches or stems from a plant to make it produce better.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 4:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Everyone will sit peacefully under his own grapevines,

and under his own fig trees;

no one will cause them to be afraid.

That is what will surely happen because Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, has said it.

<sup>5</sup> Many of the people of other nations will worship their own gods,

but we will worship Yahweh our God always, forever.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Instead, they will sit every person under his vine

and under his fig tree.

No one will make them afraid,

for the mouth of Yahweh of hosts has spoken.

<sup>5</sup> For all the peoples walk,

each one, in the name of their god.

But we will walk in the name of Yahweh our God

forever and ever.

**translationWords:**

- vine
- fig
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- walk
- name
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- God
- forever



**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Micah continues describing the “last days” when people learn and obey Yahweh’s law.
- **under his vine and under his fig trees** - This is an image of people living in peace.
- **for the mouth of Yahweh of hosts has spoken** - AT: “for Yahweh of hosts has spoken” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **walk ... in the name of** - This phrase means to worship and obey.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 4:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh says, "There will soon be a time when I will gather the people whom I have punished,  
who have been exiled,

all those whom I have caused to suffer much.

<sup>7</sup> My people who did not die while they were exiled will become a strong nation again.

Then I, Yahweh, will be their king,

and I will rule from Jerusalem forever.

<sup>8</sup> As for you people of Jerusalem,

you who guard all of my people as a shepherd guards his sheep  
from a tower,

you who live on Mount Zion will have great power again.

You people who live in Jerusalem will again rule as you did previously.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> "On that day," says Yahweh,

"I will assemble the lame

and gather the outcast,

those whom I have afflicted.

<sup>7</sup> I will turn the lame into a remnant,

and the ones driven away into a strong nation,

and I, Yahweh, will reign over them on Mount Zion,

now and forever.

<sup>8</sup> As for you, watchtower for the flock,

hill of the daughter of Zion—

to you it will come, your former dominion will be restored,

the kingdom that belongs to the daughter of Jerusalem.

**translationWords:**

- afflict, affliction
- remnant
- cast out, drive out, throw out
- nation
- I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh
- reign
- Zion, Mount Zion
- forever
- watchtower, tower
- flock, herd
- kingdom
- Jerusalem

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is describing the “last days” when people learn and obey Yahweh’s law.
- **On that day** - “In the future”
- **I will assemble the lame** - “I will bring together those who are weak”
- **and gather the outcast** - “and gather those whom I cause to be forced out”
- **and the ones driven away into a strong nation** - AT: “and the ones I drove away I will make into a strong nation” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **watchtower for the flock** - Yahweh uses this phrase to emphasize that the people of Jerusalem are supposed to guard and care for all the other people of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **hill of the daughter of Zion** - The “daughter” of a city means the people of the city. AT: “hill where the people of Zion live”
- **hill** - Some modern versions understand this Hebrew word to mean “fortress” or “stronghold” here.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 4:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> So why are you wailing now?

Is it because you have no king?

Have all your wise people died?

You are weeping loudly like a woman who is giving birth to a baby.

<sup>10</sup> Well, you people of Jerusalem should twist and groan as a woman who is having birth pains,

because now you must leave this city.

While you are traveling, you will set up tents in open fields at night;

you will go to live in Babylon.

But while you are there,

I, Yahweh, will rescue you;

I will free you from the power of your enemies.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Now, why do you shout so loudly?

Is there no king among you?

Has your counselor died?

Is this why pain grips you like that of a woman in labor?

<sup>10</sup> Be in pain

and labor to give birth,

daughter of Zion,

like a woman in labor.

For now you will you go out of the city,

live in the field,

and go to Babylon.

There you will be rescued.

There Yahweh will rescue you

from the hand of your enemies.

**translationWords:**

- king
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- perish, perishing, perishable
- labor pains, in labor
- Zion, Mount Zion
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Yahweh
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- adversary, enemy

**translationNotes:**

- **Now, why do you shout so loudly?** - Micah is mocking the people, trying to make them think about why God is dealing with them in this way. AT: "Now, you shout loudly." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Simile](#))
- **Is there no king among you? Has your counselor died? Is this why pain grips you like that of a woman in labor?** - Micah continues to address the people in a mocking tone. The answer to these questions is no. The king and counselors are still there, but they are as useless and helpless. AT: "So why are you wailing now? Is it because you have no king? Have all your wise people died? You are weeping loudly like a woman who is giving birth to a baby." (UDB) (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Simile](#))
- **Be in pain and labor to give birth, daughter of Zion, like a woman in labor** - Micah uses the image of a woman in labor to emphasize the agony of exile. He means that they should be in pain because God is punishing them by sending them away from Israel. Many of them will never come home again.
- **There you will be rescued. There Yahweh will rescue you** - AT: "There Yahweh will rescue you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 4:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Now the armies of many nations have gathered to attack you.

They are saying, 'Jerusalem must be destroyed!

We want to see this city when it becomes ruins!'"

<sup>12</sup> The prophet says, they do not know what Yahweh thinks;

and they do not understand what he is planning.

He will gather them and punish them

as farmers thresh grain on the ground.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Now many nations are assembled against you;

they say, 'Let her be defiled;

let our eyes gloat over Zion.'"

<sup>12</sup> The prophet says, "They do not know Yahweh's thoughts,

neither do they understand his plans,

for he has gathered them like sheaves for the threshing floor."

**translationWords:**

- nation
- defile, be defiled
- Zion, Mount Zion
- Yahweh
- thresh, threshing

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Jerusalem will defeat her enemies.
- **Let her be defiled; let our eyes gloat over Zion** - AT: "Let us ruin the city of Jerusalem and destroy its people so we can take great pleasure in their downfall." (See: **Active or Passive** and **Synecdoche**)
- **for he has gathered them like sheaves for the threshing floor** - This means God is also preparing to punish the people of the nations. (See: **Simile**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 4:13****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Yahweh says, "So, you people of Jerusalem, rise up and punish the nations who oppose you.

I will cause you to be very strong,  
as if you had horns made of iron,  
as if you had hooves made of bronze;  
and you will crush many nations.

Then you will take from your enemies the valuable things that they have  
taken from other countries,

and I will cause you to dedicate those things to me, the one who is  
the Lord of all the people on the earth."

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Yahweh says, "Arise and thresh, daughter of Zion,

for I will make your horn to be iron,  
and I will make your hooves to be bronze.

You will crush many peoples.

I will devote their unjust wealth to myself, Yahweh,  
their possessions to me, the Lord of the whole earth."

**translationWords:**

- thresh, threshing
- bronze
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- unjust, unjustly, injustice
- Yahweh
- possess, possession
- Lord
- earth, earthly



**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh presents the imagery of the threshing floor. (See: [4:12](#))
- **Arise and thresh, daughter of Zion** - God will use the people of Zion to punish the people of the nations. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will make your horn to be iron, and I will make your hooves to be bronze** - Yahweh is comparing the people of Zion to the strong oxen that would thresh the wheat. This means Yahweh will make the people of Israel strong again so they can defeat the other nations.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Micah 5 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Messiah

This chapter contains a prophecy explaining that the messiah was to be born in Bethlehem. This meaning is made clear in the New Testament. (See: [5:2](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophet-ess](#) and [Christ, Messiah](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Change in Personal Pronouns

Extra care must be taken in translating pronouns in this chapter. Sometimes “I” is a reference to the author and other times it is a reference to Yahweh. There is also a noticable shift where the author stops speaking about the people as “you” and begins speaking about them as “we” or “us.”

#### Links:

- [Micah 05:01 Notes](#)

## Micah 5:1

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> You people of Jerusalem, gather your troops together.

Even though you have a wall around your city to protect it,  
enemy soldiers are surrounding the city.

Soon they will strike your leader on his face with a rod.

### ULB:

5 <sup>1</sup> Now come together in battle ranks,

daughter of soldiers;

the soldiers have set up a siege around city,

with a rod they will strike the judge of Israel

on the cheek. [1]Instead of *come together in battle ranks* , some interpreters translate *cut yourselves* , referring to the pagan practice of cutting oneself while praying to idols. Also, some modern versions follow an ancient version that reads *build up your fortifications* .

### translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [rod](#)

### translationNotes:

### Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 5:2-3****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> But you people of Bethlehem in the district of Ephrathah,

even though your town is a very small one among all the towns in Judah,

someone who will rule Israel will be born in your town.

He will be someone whose family existed a very long time ago.

<sup>3</sup> Now God will allow your enemies to conquer you, you people of Israel,

but it will be for only a short time,

like the short time that women have great pain while their babies are being born.

After that, your fellow countrymen who were exiled will return to their own country.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah,

even though you are small among the clans of Judah,

out of you one will come to me

to rule in Israel,

whose beginning is from ancient times,

from everlasting.

<sup>3</sup> Therefore God will give them up,

until the time when she who is in labor bears a child,

and the rest of his brothers return to the people of Israel.

**translationWords:**

- Bethlehem, Ephrathah
- clan
- Judah

- ruler, rulers, rule
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- God
- labor pains, in labor
- children, child
- brother
- people of God, my people

#### translationNotes:

- **But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah** - Yahweh speaks to the people of this town as if they are there listening. (See: [Apostrophe](#))
- **Ephrathah** - This is either the name of the area in which Bethlehem was situated or it is just another name for Bethlehem or it distinguishes this Bethlehem from another. Bethlehem is about six miles south of Jerusalem. It was the hometown of King David. Translators may add this footnote: "The name 'Ephrathah' means 'to be fruitful.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **even though you are small among the clans of Judah** - This means God will do great things through a small and insignificant town.
- **will come to me** - Here "me" refers to Yahweh.
- **whose beginning is from ancient times, from everlasting** - This refers to the ruler descending from the ancient family of King David. The phrases "from ancient times" and "from everlasting" mean basically the same thing and emphasize how old this family line is. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Therefore God will give them up** - "Therefore God will abandon the people of Israel"
- **until the time when she who is in labor bears a child** - This refers to the time when the ruler is born, a limited time.
- **the rest of his brothers** - "the rest of his fellow Israelites." These are the Israelites in exile. Here "his" refers to the child who will be ruler.

#### Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 5:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> And that a man who will rule there in Jerusalem will stand and lead his people well,  
because Yahweh, his God, will cause him to be strong and greatly  
honored.

Then the people whom he rules will live in Jerusalem safely;  
he will be greatly honored by people all over the earth  
so no one will dare to attack Jerusalem.

<sup>5</sup> And he will cause things to go well with his people.

When the army of Assyria attacks our country  
and breaks though our fortresses,  
we will appoint seven or eight leaders to lead our army to fight against them.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> He will stand  
and shepherd his flock in the strength of Yahweh,  
in the majesty of the name of Yahweh his God.  
They will remain,  
for then he will be great to the ends of the earth.

<sup>5</sup> He will be our peace.  
When the Assyrians come into our land,  
when they march against our fortresses,  
then we will raise against them seven shepherds  
and eight leaders over men.

**translationWords:**

- shepherd, to shepherd
- flock, herd
- Yahweh
- majesty
- God
- earth, earthly

- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - These verses continue describing the ruler from Bethlehem.
- **He will stand and shepherd his flock in the strength of Yahweh** - AT: “He will lead his people in the strength of Yahweh.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in the majesty of the name of Yahweh his God** - AT: “in the powerful authority of Yahweh his God” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **They will remain** - Here “they” refers to the people of Israel. The word “Israel” or “Jerusalem” is implied. AT: “The people will remain in Israel” or “The people will remain in Jerusalem” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **for then he will be great to the ends of the earth** - This means that in the future all people from every nation will give honor to Israel’s ruler.
- **He will be our peace** - Here “our” refers to Micah and the people of Israel. AT: “He will be a man of peace” (See: [Inclusive “We”](#))
- **seven shepherds and eight leaders over men** - Here “shepherds” mean “rulers.” Also, you might want to add a footnote that says, “The numbers ‘seven’ and ‘eight’ combined mean that there will be more than enough leaders to meet the need.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 5:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> With their swords our army will defeat the army of Assyria, whose capital Nimrod founded long ago. Our army will rule their cities.

So our army will rescue us from the Assyrian army  
when they invade our country.

<sup>7</sup> The descendants of Jacob who survive will be a blessing to the people of  
other nations

like dew and rain sent by Yahweh do good to the grass.  
They will not trust in humans to help them;  
instead, they will rely on Yahweh.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> They will shepherd the land of Assyria with the sword,  
and the land of Nimrod in its entrances. [1]The Hebrew text has *in its en-  
trances* , that is, in their gates. However, some modern versions suppose  
that a different Hebrew word was intended: *with a drawn sword* .

He will rescue us from the Assyrians,  
when they come into our land,  
when they march inside our borders.

<sup>7</sup> The remnant of Jacob will be in the midst of many peoples,  
like dew from Yahweh,  
like showers on the grass,  
that do not wait for a man,  
and they do not wait for the children of mankind.

**translationWords:**

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- sword
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- remnant
- Jacob, Israel



- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **They will shepherd the land of Assyria** - Here defeating the Assyrians is spoken of as if it were herding sheep. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **land of Nimrod** - This is another name for the land of Assyria. Nimrod was a hunter and early leader. Translators may add this footnote: “The name ‘Nimrod’ means ‘rebellion.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **in its entrances** - This expression can be understood as “in its gates.” City gates were public places where leaders often made important decisions.
- **He will rescue** - “The ruler will rescue”
- **like dew from Yahweh, like showers on the grass** - This emphasizes that the people of Judah will be a refreshing, a blessing, to the nations. (See: [Simile](#))
- **that do not wait for a man, and they do not wait for the children of mankind** - AT: “and they will wait for and depend on God” (See: [Litotes](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 5:8-9****UDB:**

- <sup>8</sup> In the midst of their enemies in many people groups,  
the descendants of Jacob who remain alive will be like a lion among  
the other wild beasts of the forest,  
like a strong young lion that attacks sheep in a flock,  
and no one will be able to rescue their enemies.
- <sup>9</sup> You Israelites will defeat all your enemies  
and completely destroy them.

**ULB:**

- <sup>8</sup> The remnant of Jacob will be among the nations,  
among many peoples,  
like a lion among the animals of the forest,  
like a young lion among the flocks of sheep.  
When he goes through them,  
he will trample over them and tear them to pieces,  
and there will be no one to save them.
- <sup>9</sup> Your hand will be lifted against your enemies,  
and it will destroy them.

**translationWords:**

- remnant
- Jacob, Israel
- nation
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- lion
- flock, herd
- sheep, ram, ewe
- save, safe
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- adversary, enemy

**translationNotes:**

- **among the nations, among many peoples** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the “remnant of Jacob” will live in many different nations. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **like a lion among the animals of the forest, like a young lion among the flocks of sheep. When he goes through them, he will trample over them and tear them to pieces** - This emphasizes that the people of Israel will have the power and courage while in exile to judge and destroy their enemies. (See: [Simile](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 5:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh says,

”At that time, I will destroy you Israelite people’s horses that your soldiers use in war,

together with your chariots.

<sup>11</sup> I will tear down your city walls

and destroy all your fortified cities.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> “It will happen in that day,” says Yahweh,

”that I will destroy your horses from among you

and will demolish your chariots.

<sup>11</sup> I will destroy the cities in your land

and throw down all your strongholds.

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- horse
- chariot
- stronghold, fortress, fortified

**translationNotes:**

- **It will happen in that day** - This refers to an indefinite time in the future, probably during the exile.
- **I will destroy your horses from among you and will demolish your chariots** - The people of Israel used horses and chariots in only in battle. It also may have involved alliances with foreign, godless countries. God did not want the people to trust in their weapons of war to protect them more than they trusted in him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 5:12-15****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> I will get rid of all those among you who practice magic  
and the fortune tellers.

<sup>13</sup> I will destroy all your idols and stone pillars,  
and then you will no longer bow down and worship things that you  
yourselves have made.

<sup>14</sup> I will get rid of your poles that represent the goddess Asherah,  
and I will also destroy all your idols.

<sup>15</sup> Because I will be very angry,  
I will also punish the people of all the nations who have not obeyed  
me.”

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> I will destroy the witchcraft in your hand,  
and you will no longer have any diviners.

<sup>13</sup> I will destroy your carved figures  
and your stone pillars from among you.

You will no longer worship the workmanship of your hands.

<sup>14</sup> I will uproot your Asherah poles from among you,  
and I will destroy your cities.

<sup>15</sup> I will execute vengeance in anger and wrath  
on the nations that have not listened.”

**translationWords:**

- hand, right hand, to hand over
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- pillar, column
- worship
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth
- avenge, revenge, vengeance
- angry, anger

- wrath, fury
- nation

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Micah 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter is written as a court case or lawsuit by Yahweh against His people. (See: [people of God, my people](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Names in Lawsuit

Moses, Aaron and Miriam are mentioned as witnesses for Yahweh and against Israel. Ahab and Omri are mentioned as kings who were evil and did not follow Yahweh. Obedience to the law of Moses is contrasted with disobedience to the law. (See: [witness, eyewitness, evil, wicked, wickedness](#) and [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#))

#### Links:

- [Micah 06:01 Notes](#)



**Micah 6:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Pay attention to what Yahweh will say:

Micah says to Yahweh, "Stand up in court and accuse the Israelites.

Allow the hills and mountains to hear what you will say.

<sup>2</sup> The mountains must listen carefully to what Yahweh says about his people, so they can be witnesses.

Indeed, Yahweh has many things to accuse his people Israel about.

**ULB:**

6 <sup>1</sup> Now listen to what Yahweh says,

"Arise and state your case before the mountains;

let the hills hear your voice.

<sup>2</sup> Listen to Yahweh's lawsuit, you mountains,

and you enduring foundations of the earth.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,

and he will fight in court against Israel."

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- Micah
- voice
- foundation, founded
- earth, earthly
- Yahweh
- people of God, my people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

**translationNotes:**

- **Arise and state your case ... he will fight in court against Israel** - In 6:1-5 Micah uses courtroom imagery. Yahweh speaks before the witnesses to determine why the people of Israel have abandoned God and started worshiping idols.

- **the mountains ... the hills ... enduring foundations of the earth** - Micah is speaking to these things as if they are humans. Micah is using the mountains, hills, and foundations of the earth as an eternal witness against his people's idolatry. (See: [Personification](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 6:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> He says this: "My people, what have I done to cause trouble for you ?

What have I done to cause you to experience difficulties?

Answer me!

<sup>4</sup> I did great things for your ancestors;

I brought them out of Egypt;

I rescued them from that land where they were slaves.

I sent Moses to lead them,

and his older brother Aaron and his older sister Miriam.

<sup>5</sup> My people, think about when Balak, the king of Moab, requested Beor's son Balaam to curse your ancestors,

and think about what Balaam replied.

Think about how your ancestors crossed the Jordan River miraculously while they were traveling from Acacia to Gilgal.

Think about those things in order that you may know that I, Yahweh, do what is right."

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> "My people, what have I done to you?

How have I wearied you?

Testify against me!

<sup>4</sup> For I brought you up out of the land of Egypt  
and rescued you out of the house of bondage.

I sent Moses, Aaron, and Miriam to you.

<sup>5</sup> My people, call to mind what Balak king of Moab devised,  
and what Balaam son of Beor answered him  
as you went from Shittim to Gilgal,  
that you may know the righteous acts of me, Yahweh."

**translationWords:**

- people of God, my people
- testimony, testify
- Egypt, Egyptian
- house
- enslave, in bondage
- Moses
- Aaron
- Miriam
- mind
- king
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- Balaam
- Gilgal
- righteous, righteousness
- I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This continues Yahweh's lawsuit against the people of Israel. (See: 6:1-2)
- **My people, what have I done to you? How have I wearied you? Testify against me!** - God uses questions to emphasize that he is a good God, and he has done nothing to cause the people to stop worshiping him. AT: "My people, I have been good to you. I have done nothing to make you tired of me. If you think I have, testify against me, now." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **house of bondage** - AT: "the place where you were slaves"
- **call to mind** - "remember"
- **Balak king of Moab devised, and what Balaam son of Beor answered him** - This refers to an event in the past when King Balak hired Balaam to curse the people of Israel. However, God allowed Balaam to only bless the people.
- **Beor** - This is the name of Balaam's father. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Shittim** - This is the name of a place in Moab.
- **that you may know the righteous acts of me, Yahweh** - "so that you may remember who I am, and what I have done for you"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 6:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> The Israelite people ask, "What shall we bring to Yahweh who lives in heaven  
when we come to him and bow down before him?

Should we bring calves that are a year old  
that will be offerings that will be killed and completely burned on  
the altar?

<sup>7</sup> Would Yahweh be pleased if we offered to him a thousand rams  
and ten thousand streams of olive oil?

Should we offer our firstborn children to be sacrifices  
to pay for the sins that we have committed?"

<sup>8</sup> No, because he has shown each of us what is good to do;  
he has shown us what he requires each of us to do:  
he wants us to do what is just and to love to act mercifully toward others,  
and he wants us to live humbly while we fellowship with him, our  
God.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> What should I bring to Yahweh,  
as I bow down to the high God?  
Should I come to him with burnt offerings,  
with calves a year old?

<sup>7</sup> Will Yahweh be pleased with thousands of rams,  
or with ten thousand rivers of oil?  
Should I give my firstborn for my transgression,  
the fruit of my body for my own sin?

<sup>8</sup> He has told you, man,  
what is good,  
and what Yahweh requires from you:  
Act justly,  
love kindness,  
and walk humbly with your God.

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- bow, bow down
- God
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- sheep, ram, ewe
- oil
- firstborn
- transgress, transgression
- fruit, fruitful
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- good, goodness
- just, justice, justly
- walk
- humble, humility

**translationNotes:**

- **What should I bring to Yahweh, as I bow down to the high God? Should I come to him with burnt offerings, with calves a year old? Will Yahweh be pleased with thousands of rams, or with ten thousand rivers of oil? Should I give my firstborn for my transgression, the fruit of my body for my own sin?** - Micah uses questions to teach the people of Israel about what is really pleasing to God. AT: "Surely you do not think that you can please God by bringing him a year-old calf, 1,000 rams, 10,000 rivers of oil, or even your firstborn child as a sacrifice for your sins." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **my firstborn for my transgression, the fruit of my body for my own sin** - These two phrases mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **He has told you** - "Yahweh has told you"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 6:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> God says this: "I am Yahweh, so if you are wise, you should honor me.

I am calling out to you people of Jerusalem to tell you this:

The armies that will destroy your city are coming,

so pay careful attention to me, the one who is causing them to punish you with my rod.

<sup>10</sup> You wicked people have filled your homes with valuable things  
that you acquired by cheating others.

You use false measures when you buy and sell things.

Those are things that I hate.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> The voice of Yahweh is making a proclamation to the city—  
even now wisdom acknowledges your name:

"Pay attention to the rod,

and to the one who has put it in place. [1]Instead of the Hebrew text's reading of *Pay attention to the rod and to the one who has put it into place*, some modern versions have *Listen, tribe, and those assembled together in the city*.

<sup>10</sup> There is wealth in the houses of the wicked that is dishonest,  
and false measures that are abominable.

**translationWords:**

- voice
- Yahweh
- proclaim, proclamation
- wise, wisdom
- name
- rod
- house
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- abomination, abominable

**translationNotes:**

- **The voice of Yahweh is making a proclamation to the city** - AT: “Yahweh is making an announcement to the people of Jerusalem” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **even now wisdom acknowledges your name** - AT: “and the wise person will fear Yahweh” or “and the wise person will obey what Yahweh says”
- **Pay attention to the rod, and to the one who has put it in place** - Here “rod” refers to the enemy army with which Yahweh will discipline his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **false measures** - This refers to weights that weighed items incorrectly so the person could purposely deceive others and make more money for himself.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 06 Translation Questions](#)



**Micah 6:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> You do not think that I should say nothing about people who use scales that do not weigh correctly,

and who use weights that are not accurate, do you?

<sup>12</sup> The rich people among you always act violently to get money from poor people.

All of the people in Jerusalem are liars,  
and they always deceive people.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Should I consider a person to be innocent if he uses fraudulent scales,  
with a bag of deceptive weights?

<sup>12</sup> The rich men are full of violence,  
the inhabitants have spoken lies,  
and their tongue in their mouth is deceitful.

**translationWords:**

- innocent
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- tongue

**translationNotes:**

- **Should I consider a person to be innocent if he uses fraudulent scales, with a bag of deceptive weights** - Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that he considers guilty the person who deceives others in order to make more money. AT: "I certainly will consider a person guilty if he uses unfair scales and weights in order to cheat others and makes more money for himself. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **The rich men are full of violence** - "The rich men take advantage of the poor"
- **the inhabitants have spoken lies, and their tongue in their mouth is deceitful** - Both of these clauses mean the same thing and are combined for emphasis. AT: "all of you are liars." This should make an emotional impact on readers. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 6:13-15****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Therefore, I have already begun to get rid of you,

to ruin you because of the sins that you have committed.

<sup>14</sup> Soon you will eat food, but you will not have enough to satisfy you;

your stomachs will still feel as though they are empty.

You will try to save up money,

but you will be able to save nothing,

because I will send your enemies to take it from you in wars.

<sup>15</sup> You will plant crops,

but you will not harvest anything.

You will press olives,

but others, not you, will use the olive oil.

You will trample on the grapes and make wine from the juice,

but others, not you, will drink the wine.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Therefore I have struck you with a severe wound,

I have made you a ruin because of your sins.

<sup>14</sup> You will eat but not be satisfied;

your emptiness will remain inside you.

You will store goods away but not save,

and what you do save I will give to the sword. [1]Parts of this verse are difficult to understand, because there are two Hebrew words in it whose meanings are not known. As a result, various other readings have been proposed that some modern versions follow.

<sup>15</sup> You will sow but not reap;

you will tread the olives but not anoint yourselves with oil;

you will press grapes but drink no wine.

**translationWords:**

- ruin, ruins
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sword
- sow, sower, plant
- reap, reaper
- olive
- anoint, anointed
- oil
- grape
- wine, wineskin, new wine

**translationNotes:**

- **Therefore I have struck you with a severe wound ... but drink no wine** - Yahweh describes his punishment of his people as allowing the enemy army to come and take everything they grew, prepared, and stored for themselves.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 6:16****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Those things will happen to you because you obey only the wicked laws of King Omri,  
and you do the terrible things that King Ahab and his descendants  
commanded.  
So I will destroy your country,  
and I will cause the other people groups to despise you, my own  
people.”

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> The regulations made by Omri have been kept,  
and all the deeds of the house of Ahab.  
You walk by their advice.  
So I will make you, city, a ruin,  
and you inhabitants an object of hissing,  
and you will bear scorn as my people.” [1]The Hebrew text has *you will bear  
scorn as my people* , but an ancient Greek version has *you will bear the scorn  
of the nations* . Some modern versions follow this reading.

**translationWords:**

- works, deeds, work, acts
- house
- Ahab
- walk
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- people of God, my people

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel.
- **The regulations made by Omri have been kept** - “You have done what Omri commanded”  
(See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Omri ... Ahab** - Both of these men were kings over the northern kingdom of Israel. God  
considered both of them to be very wicked. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **You walk by their advice** - "you have done the evil things that Omri and Ahab told the people to do
- **an object of hissing** - That is, something to mock by hissing at it.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Micah 7 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Last days

This chapter looks forward to the hope of the coming savior for the faithful remnant. This is the future restoration of Israel when true peace will come. (See: [Savior](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [remnant](#) and [restore](#), [restoration](#))

#### Prophet

The prophet was able to speak to God on behalf of the people. Often in this chapter, the prophet speaks in Israel's place and offers repentance to Yahweh. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))

#### Links:

- [Micah 07:01 Notes](#)

**Micah 7:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> I am very miserable!

I am like someone who is hungry, who searches for fruit to eat  
and who finds no grapes or figs to eat  
because all the fruit has been picked.

<sup>2</sup> Everyone who honored God has disappeared from this land;  
not one of them is left.

The people who are left are all murderers;  
it is as though everyone is eager to kill his fellow countryman.

**ULB:**

7 <sup>1</sup> Woe is me!

For me it is like when the harvest of summer fruit is over,  
and also even the gleaning of the leftover grapes in the vineyards:  
There are no more clusters of fruit to be found,  
none of the early figs that I crave.

<sup>2</sup> Faithful people have disappeared from the land,  
there is no upright person in all mankind.  
They all lie in wait to shed blood;  
each one hunts his own brother with a net.

**translationWords:**

- woe
- harvest
- glean, gleaning
- grape
- vineyard
- perish, perishing, perishable



**translationNotes:**

- **For me it is like when the harvest of summer fruit ... the early figs** - Micah emphasizes that there are no longer any honest people, loyal to God, in Israel. AT: "For me the people of Israel are like a vineyard after the harvest and gleaning. The vines are bare. I can no longer find any fruit, but I still crave to eat a ripe fig. (See: [Simile](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **Faithful people have disappeared ... with a net** - Micah exaggerates to show how bad the situation is. He feels there is no one good left in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 7:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> They do what is evil with all their might.

Government officials and judges all ask for bribes.

Important people tell others what they want,  
and they plot together about how to get it.

<sup>4</sup> Even the best people are as worthless as briars;

the people who we thought to be the most honest are worse than  
thornbushes.

But Yahweh will soon judge them.

Now is the time that he will punish people,  
when they will be very confused because of it.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Their hands are very good at doing harm:

the ruler asks for money,  
the judge is ready for bribes,  
and the powerful man is saying to others what he wants to obtain.  
Thus they plot together.

<sup>4</sup> The best of them is like briars,

the most upright is a hedge of thorns.  
It is the day foretold by your watchmen,  
the day of your punishment.  
Now is the time of their confusion.

**translationWords:**

- hand, right hand, to hand over
- ruler, rulers, rule
- judge
- bribe
- punish, punishment

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Micah continues speaking about the people of Israel.
- **Their hands are very good** - AT: "The people are very good" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **The best of them is like briers, the most upright is a hedge of thorns** - This means that even the best leaders in Israel caused harm and were worthless. (See: [Simile](#))
- **It is the day foretold by your watchmen, the day of your punishment** - Here "your" still refers to the people of Israel. AT: "Their prophets have told them that Yahweh would punish them" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Forms of You](#))
- **Now is the time of their confusion** - This may refer to military defeat. AT: "Now it is here, and they will not understand what is happening"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 7:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> So do not trust anyone!

Do not trust even a friend;  
even be careful what you say to your wife, whom you love.

<sup>6</sup> Boys will despise their fathers,  
and girls will defy their mothers.  
Women will defy their mothers-in-law.  
Your enemies will be those who live in your own house.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Do not trust any neighbor;  
put no confidence in any friend.  
Be careful about what you say  
even to the woman who lies in your arms.

<sup>6</sup> For a son dishonors his father,  
a daughter rises up against her mother,  
and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law.  
A man's enemies are the people of his own house.

**translationWords:**

- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- neighbor
- dishonor, dishonorable
- adversary, enemy

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Micah continues speaking to the people of Israel.
- **Do not trust any neighbor ... people of his own house** - Micah continues to show that there is no longer anyone good, honest, and loyal to God among God's people. Here he emphasizes that they cannot even trust friends or family.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 7:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> As for me, I wait for Yahweh to help me.

I confidently expect that God, my Savior, will answer me when I pray.

<sup>8</sup> You who are our enemies,

do not gloat about what has happened to us,

because even if we have experienced disasters,

those disasters will end, and we will be prosperous again.

Even if it is as though we are sitting in the darkness,

Yahweh will be our light.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> But as for me, I will look to Yahweh.

I will wait for the God of my salvation;

my God will hear me.

<sup>8</sup> Do not rejoice over me, my enemy.

After I fall,

I will rise.

When I sit in darkness,

Yahweh will be a light for me.

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- God
- salvation
- rejoice
- adversary, enemy
- darkness
- light

**translationNotes:**

- **But as for me** - Here “me” refers to Micah.
- **Do not rejoice over me** - Micah is not referring only to himself. He means the enemy should not rejoice over what happens to all the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **When I sit in darkness, Yahweh will be a light for me** - Micah refers to the disaster that is coming to the people of Israel as “darkness.” He means even though God will let the enemy come destroy them now, he will come and rescue them in the future. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 7:9****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> We must be patient while Yahweh punishes us

because we have sinned against him.

But later, it will be as though he will go to court and defend us.

He will make sure that the judge makes a right decision about us.

It will be as though he will bring us out into the light,

and we will see him rescue us.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Because I sinned against Yahweh,

I will bear his rage

until he pleads my cause,

and executes judgment for me.

He will bring me to the light,

and I will see him rescue me in his justice.

**translationWords:**

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- light
- just, justice, justly

**translationNotes:**

- **Because I sinned** - Micah is not only referring to himself. He means all the people of Israel have sinned. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **until he pleads my cause, and executes judgment for me** - This refers to when God decides he has punished his people enough. Then he will punish the people of the other nations who harmed the people of Israel.
- **He will bring me to the light** - AT: "He will come and save us from our enemies. It will be like bringing a person in the dark into the light" (See: **Metaphor**)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 7:10****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Our enemies will also see it, and they will be disgraced  
because they ridiculed us, saying  
“Why is Yahweh, that God of yours, not helping you?”  
But with our own eyes we will see them be defeated;  
we will see them trampled  
like mud in the streets.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Then my enemy will see it,  
and shame will cover the one who said to me,  
“Where is Yahweh your God?”  
My eyes will look at her;  
she will be trampled down like the mud in the streets.

**translationWords:**

- adversary, enemy
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- Yahweh
- God

**translationNotes:**

- **Then my enemy** - Micah refers not only to himself. He means the enemy of all the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Where is Yahweh your God?** - The enemy uses a question to mock the people of Israel. AT: “Yahweh your God cannot help you” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **My eyes** - AT: “I” or “We” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **will look at her** - Here “her” refers to the enemies who harmed the people of Israel.
- **she will be trampled down** - AT: “their enemies will trample them down” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 7:11-13****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> You people of Israel, at that time your cities will be rebuilt,

and your territory will become larger.

<sup>12</sup> Your people will come back to you from many countries,

from Assyria, from near the Euphrates River in the east, and from  
Egypt in the south,

from the Dead Sea to the Mediterranean Sea,

and from many mountains.

<sup>13</sup> But the other countries on the earth will become desolate

because of the evil deeds that their people have done.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> A day to build your walls will come;

on that day the boundaries will be extended very far.

<sup>12</sup> On that day your people will come to you,

from Assyria and the cities in Egypt,

from Egypt to the great river, the Euphrates,

from sea to sea,

and from mountain to mountain.

<sup>13</sup> Those lands will be abandoned

because of the people who are living there now,

because of the fruit of their actions.

**translationWords:**

- people of God, my people
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Euphrates River
- fruit, fruitful

**translationNotes:**

- **A day to build your walls will come** - Here “walls” refers to the walls around their cities, which provided safety and security from their enemies.
- **the boundaries will be extended very far** - AT: “Yahweh will greatly extend the boundaries of your land” or “Yahweh will greatly increase the size of your kingdom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Those lands will be abandoned** - AT: “Those lands will be empty” or “No one will live in those lands”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 7:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Yahweh, protect your people as a shepherd protects his sheep with his staff.

Lead the people whom you have chosen to belong to you.

Even though some of them live by themselves in a forest,

give them the fertile pastureland

in the regions of Bashan and Gilead,

which they possessed long ago.

<sup>15</sup> Yahweh says,

”Yes, I will perform miracles for you

like the miracles that I performed when I rescued your ancestors  
from being slaves in Egypt.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Shepherd your people with your rod,

the flock of your inheritance.

They live alone in a forest,

in the midst of a plantation.

Let them graze in Bashan and Gilead

like in the old days.

<sup>15</sup> As in the days when you came out of the land of Egypt,

I will show them wonders.

**translationWords:**

- shepherd, to shepherd
- people of God, my people
- rod
- flock, herd
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

- [Carmel, Mount Carmel](#)
- [Bashan](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Shepherd your people with your rod, the flock of your inheritance** - Micah is praying to Yahweh, asking him to protect his people of Israel again. Here “rod” refers to God’s leadership and guidance, as a shepherd uses a stick to guide and protect his sheep. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They live alone in a forest** - Micah means that some of the people are living where the ground is poor and they are isolated and cannot easily obtain needed goods.
- **Let them graze in Bashan and Gilead** - These regions are known as rich land for growing food. So Micah is asking for further extension of the territory, one that had been lost by invaders years before.
- **like in the old days** - This may refer to when Solomon was king.
- **I will show** - Here “I” refers to Yahweh.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 7:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> People from many nations will see what Yahweh does for you,

and they will be ashamed

because they do not have any power.

They will put their hands over their mouths and their ears because they will be very amazed at what Yahweh does.

They will not be able to say anything or hear anything, because they will be terrified.

<sup>17</sup> Being very humiliated, they will crawl on the ground like snakes.

They will come out of their homes trembling

and stand to honor Yahweh our God.

They will be very afraid of him

and will tremble in front of him.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> The nations will see and be ashamed  
of all their power.

They will put their hands on their mouths;  
their ears will be deaf.

<sup>17</sup> They will lick the dust like a snake,  
like creatures that crawl on the earth.

They will come out of their dens with fear;  
they will come with fear to you, Yahweh our God,  
and they will be afraid because of you.

**translationWords:**

- nation
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- power, powers
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- serpent, snake, viper



- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **They will put their hands on their mouths; their ears will be deaf** - This shows how dismayed they are, so much so they cannot respond. See the UDB. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **They will lick the dust like a snake, like creatures that crawl on the earth.** - Both phrases mean about the same thing. God's enemies will be completely humiliated and come to him in fear after they see the powerful things he does. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Simile](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 7:18****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> Yahweh, there is no God like you;

you forgive the sins that the people who have survived committed,  
the people who belong to you.

You do not remain angry forever;

you are very happy to show us that you faithfully love us.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Who is a God like you,

you who take away sin,

you who pass over the transgression

of the remnant of your inheritance?

You do not keep your anger forever,

because you love to show us your covenant faithfulness.

**translationWords:**

- God
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- transgress, transgression
- remnant
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- forever
- love
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

**translationNotes:**

- **Who is a God like you** - Micah uses a question to emphasize that there is no else who does the things that Yahweh does. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the remnant of your inheritance** - “those of us your chosen people who have survived your punishment ”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Micah 7:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> You will again act kindly toward us.

You will get rid of the scroll on which you have written the sins that we have committed,

as though you were trampling it under your feet

or throwing it into the deep ocean.

<sup>20</sup> You will show that you faithfully do what you promised for us and faithfully love us,

just as you solemnly promised long ago to our ancestors Abraham and Jacob that you would do.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> You will again have compassion on us;

you will trample our iniquities under your feet.

You will throw all our sins into the depths of the sea.

<sup>20</sup> You will give truth to Jacob

and covenant faithfulness to Abraham,

as you swore to our ancestors in ancient days.

**translationWords:**

- compassion, compassionate
- iniquity
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- true, truth, come true
- Jacob, Israel
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- Abraham, Abram

**translationNotes:**

- **You will** - Here “you” refers to Yahweh. (See: **Forms of You**)
- **on us** - Here “us” refers to Micah and the people of Israel. (See: **Inclusive “We”**)

- **you will trample our iniquities under your feet. You will throw all our sins into the depths of the sea** - This means God will completely forgive the people's sins and will no longer punish the people for them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **give truth to Jacob and covenant faithfulness to Abraham** - Here "Jacob" and "Abraham," who are ancestors of the nation of Israel, refer to the people of Israel now. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **to our ancestors** - This refers to Abraham and Jacob, and maybe others who were alive when God made his covenant with Israel.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 Translation Questions](#)

## translationQuestions

### Micah 1

**Q?** Who were the kings of Judah when the word of Yahweh came to Micah?

**A.** Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah were kings of Judah when the word of Yahweh came to Micah. [1:1]

---

**Q?** On what will Yahweh come down and tread?

**A.** Yahweh will come down and tread on the pagan shrines on the earth. [1:3]

---

**Q?** Why will Yahweh bring this judgment?

**A.** Yahweh will bring this judgment because of the rebellion of Jacob, and because of the sins of the house of Israel. [1:5]

---

**Q?** How did Samaria gather carved figures, gifts, and idols?

**A.** Samaria gathered carved figures, gifts, and idols from the gifts to her prostitution. [1:7]

---

**Q?** How did Micah express his grief over the sin of Israel and Jacob?

**A.** Micah lamented and wailed, and went barefoot and naked. [1:8]

---

**Q?** Why did Beth Ezel mourn?

**A.** Beth Ezel mourned, for their protection was taken away. [1:11]

---

**Q?** What city was the beginning of sin for the daughter of Zion?

**A.** Lachish was the beginning of sin for the daughter of Zion. [1:13]

---

**Q?** Why should the Israelites shave their heads?

**A.** They should shave their heads, for their children would go into exile from them. [1:16]

---

**Micah 2**

**Q?** Where are people planning to do evil?

**A.** They are planning on their beds to do evil. [2:1]

---

**Q?** Why will the rich people have no descendants to divide up the territory?

**A.** Yahweh will change the territory of the people, and remove it from them. So the rich people will have no descendants to divide up the territory. [2:4-5]

---

**Q?** From whom do Yahweh's people strip the robe?

**A.** They strip the robe from those who pass by unsuspectingly. [2:8]

---

**Q?** Why should Yahweh's people get up and leave?

**A.** They should get up and leave for this was not a place where they could stay, because of its uncleanness. [2:10]

---

**Q?** Who will gather the remnant of Israel?

**A.** Yahweh will gather the remnant of Israel. [2:12]

---

### Micah 3

**Q?** Who eats the flesh of Yahweh's people?

**A.** The leaders of Jacob eat the flesh of Yahweh's people. [3:3]

---

**Q?** Why will Yahweh hide his face from the leaders of Jacob?

**A.** Yahweh will hide his face from the leaders of Jacob because they have done evil deeds. [3:4]

---

**Q?** Why will the prophets do no divination?

**A.** It will be dark so that the prophets will do no divination. [3:6]

---

**Q?** For what do the leaders judge?

**A.** The leaders judge for a bribe. [3:11]

---



**Micah 4**

**Q?** When will the mountain of Yahweh's house be established over the other mountains?

**A.** In the last days the mountain of Yahweh's house will be established over the other mountains. [4:1]

---

**Q?** Why will many nations want to go to the mountain of Yahweh?

**A.** Many nations will want to go to the mountain of Yahweh, so he will teach them his ways, and they will walk in his paths. [4:2]

---

**Q?** In what do all the peoples walk?

**A.** All the peoples walk in the name of their god. [4:5]

---

**Q?** Whom will Yahweh assemble?

**A.** Yahweh will assemble the lame and gather the outcast, those whom he had afflicted. [4:6]

---

**Q?** Where will the daughter of Zion be rescued?

**A.** The daughter of Zion will be rescued in Babylon. [4:10]

---

**Q?** According to the prophet, who does not know Yahweh's thoughts?

**A.** The nations do not know Yahweh's thoughts [4:12]

---

**Q?** To whom will Yahweh devote many peoples' unjust wealth?

**A.** Yahweh will devote their unjust wealth to himself. [4:13]

---

**Micah 5**

**Q?** With what will the enemy strike the leader of Israel?

**A.** They will strike the leader of Israel with a rod on the cheek. [5:1]

---

**Q?** For how long will God give up the clans of Judah?

**A.** God will give them up, until the time when she who was in labor bears a child. [5:3]

---

**Q?** Who will shepherd his flock in the strength of Yahweh?

**A.** The child will shepherd his flock in the strength of Yahweh. [5:4]

---

**Q?** For what do the remnant of Jacob not wait?

**A.** The remnant of Jacob do not wait for man. [5:7]

---

**Q?** What will happen when the Israelites' hand will be lifted against their enemies?

**A.** When the Israelites' hand is lifted against their enemies, it will destroy them. [5:9]

---

**Q?** On whom will Yahweh execute vengeance?

**A.** Yahweh will execute vengeance on the nations that have not listened. [5:15]

---

**Micah 6**

**Q?** What will Yahweh do against Israel?

**A.** Yahweh will fight in court against Israel. [6:2]

---

**Q?** What did Yahweh command his people to do against him?

**A.** He commanded them to testify against him. [6:3]

---

**Q?** What did Yahweh require from his people?

**A.** Yahweh required his people to act justly, love kindness, and walk humbly with their God. [6:8]

---

**Q?** Whose tongue is deceitful?

**A.** The tongue of the inhabitants who have spoken lies is deceitful. [6:12]

---

**Q?** Why did Yahweh make the city a ruin?

**A.** Yahweh made the city a ruin because of his sins. [6:13]

---

**Q?** By whose advice did the city walk?

**A.** The city walked by the advice of Omri and Ahab. [6:16]

---

**Micah 7**

**Q?** Who perished from the earth?

**A.** The godly man perished from the earth. [7:2]

---

**Q?** Who foretold the day of the punishment of the remaining people?

**A.** The watchmen foretold the day of the punishment of the remaining people. [7:4]

---

**Q?** Who are a man's enemies?

**A.** A man's enemies are the people of his own house. [7:6]

---

**Q?** What would happen after Micah falls?

**A.** After Micah falls, he will rise. [7:8]

---

**Q?** For how long will Micah bear Yahweh's rage?

**A.** Micah will bear Yahweh's rage until Yahweh pleaded his cause, and executed judgment for Micah. [7:9]

---

**Q?** At whom will Micah's eyes look?

**A.** Micah's eyes will look at his enemy. [7:10]

---

**Q?** What will happen when a day comes to build the walls?

**A.** When a day comes to build the walls, the boundaries will be extended very far. [7:11-12]

---

**Q?** How did Micah ask Yahweh to shepherd his people?

**A.** Micah asked Yahweh to shepherd his people with his rod. [7:14]

---

**Q?** What will Yahweh show his people?

**A.** Yahweh will show them wonders. [7:15]

---

**Q?** What will the nations see and be ashamed of?

**A.** They will see and be ashamed of all their power. [7:16]

---

**Q?** Who will the nations come to and be afraid of?

**A.** The nations will come to Yahweh and they will be afraid because of him. [7:17]

---

**Q?** Why will Yahweh not keep his anger forever?

**A.** Yahweh will not keep his anger forever, because he loves to show his covenant faithfulness. [7:18]

---

**Q?** Into what will Yahweh throw all the sins of the people of Israel?

**A.** Yahweh will throw all their sins into the depths of the sea. [7:19]

---

## translationWords

### Aaron

#### Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the **priest, priesthood** priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: **How to Translate Names**)

(See also: **priest, priesthood, Moses, Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel**)

#### Bible References:

Waiting

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-15]** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **[10-05]** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **[13-09]** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **[13-11]** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **[14-07]** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

## abomination, abominable

### Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include: lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by, “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “is an abomination to” could include: “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as, “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [Daniel](#), [desecrate](#), [desolate](#), [desolation](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father”
- “Abraham” means, “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- While living in the land of Canaan, when they were very old, Abraham and his wife Sarah had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [chaldea](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **[05-04]** Then God changed **Abram**’s name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham**’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[06-01]** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[06-04]** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **[21-02]** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.



## **adversary, enemy**

### **Definition:**

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**afflict, affliction****Definition:**

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like, “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as, “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.” physical
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as, “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See: [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## Ahab

### Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Jezebel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-02]** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **[19-03]** **Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **[19-05]** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

## Ahaz

### Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshiping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **angry, anger**

### **Definition:**

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: **wrath, fury**)

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## anoint, anointed

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle, were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **arrogant**

### **Definition:**

The term “arrogant” means to be proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- To be arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: [acknowledge](#), [boast](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth

### Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. “Ashtoreth” may be another name for “Asherah,” or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term “Asherah poles” refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah’s husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Baal](#), [Gideon](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## assembly, assemble

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” where the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers is sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

(See also: [council](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

### Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-02]** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-03]** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **[20-04]** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

## **avenge, revenge, vengeance**

### **Definition:**

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The expression, “to avenge” someone could also be translated as “to right a wrong” or “to get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by, “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Babylon, Babylonian

### Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [Babel](#), [Chaldea](#), [Chaldean](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **[20-07]** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **[20-11]** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

## Balaam

### Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curse](#), [cursed](#), [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Euphrates](#), [Jordan River](#), [Midian](#), [Midianites](#), [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#), [Peor](#), [Mount Peor](#), [Baal Peor](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Bashan

### Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [oak](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Bethlehem, Ephrathah

### Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: [Caleb](#), [David](#), [Micah](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-02] David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- [23-04] Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- [23-06] ”The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**”

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

*from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.*

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-07] God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- [01-15] God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- [01-16] So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- [04-04] “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- [04-07] Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- [07-03] Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

## **bow, bow down**

### **Definition:**

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **bribe**

### **Definition:**

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- “To bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “to pay to influence (someone)” or “to pay to have a dishonest favor done” or “to pay for a favor.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**bronze****Definition:**

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **burnt offering, offering by fire**

### **Definition:**

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Carmel, Mount Carmel

### Facts:

“Mount Carmel” refers to a mountain range that was located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea just north of the Plain of Sharon. Its highest peak is 546 meters high.

- There was also a town called “Carmel” located in Judah, south of the Salt Sea.
- The wealthy landowner Nabal and his wife Abigail lived near the town of Carmel where David and his men helped guard Nabal’s sheep shearers.
- On Mount Carmel, Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal to a contest in order to prove that Yahweh is the only true God.
- To make it clear that this wasn’t just a single mountain, “Mount Carmel” could be translated as, “mountain on the Carmel mountain range” or “Carmel mountain range.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **cast out, drive out, throw out**

### **Definition:**

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”

(See also: [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [demon-possessed](#), [lots](#), [casting lots](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## chariot

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-10]** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.
- Rome, Romaning in his **chariot**.

## children, child

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), spirit, spiritual, believer, beloved other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proved he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [anoint](#), [anointed](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **[17-08]** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.

- [21-01] From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- [21-05] The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- [21-06] God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- [43-07]"But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- [43-09]"But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- [46-06] Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## clan

### Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: [family](#), [Jethro](#), [Reuel](#), [tribe](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **compassion, compassionate**

### **Definition:**

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**counsel, counselor, advice, advisor****Definition:**

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, “to counsel” could be translated as “to advise” or “to make suggestions” or “to exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## **covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love**

### **Definition:**

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable to do and say what has been promised and what will benefit someone else.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [grace](#), [gracious](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#), [promise](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**cow, calf, bull, cattle****Definition:**

The term , “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow”, the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [heifer](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [yoke](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## darkness

### Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

### Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

## **declare, declaration**

### **Definition:**

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by, “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as, “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase, “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as, “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**defile, be defiled****Definition:**

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [unclean](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## deliver, deliverer, deliverance

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as, “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[16-03]** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **[16-16]** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **[16-17]** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

## **dishonor, dishonorable**

### **Definition:**

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as “to not honor” or “to treat with no respect.”
- The noun, “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: [disgrace](#), [disgraceful](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## **divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer**

### **Definition:**

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [magic](#), [magician](#), [sorcery](#), [sorcerer](#), [witchcraft](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## eagle

### Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See: [Daniel](#), [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## earth, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

## enslave, in bondage

### Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To “enslave” also means to take away a person’s freedom.
- Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- In a figurative way, human beings are “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## everlasting, eternal, eternity

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include, “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## **Euphrates River**

### **Facts:**

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.



- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## exalt, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include, “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts, it could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glorify](#), [boast](#), [boastful](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## exile, the Exile

### Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as, “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include, “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## face

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression, “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- The expression, “keep the faith” could be translated by, “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence, “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by, “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression, “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like, “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[31-07]** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **[32-16]** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”

- **[38-09]** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

## faithful, faithfulness

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **[14-12]** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **[15-13]** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **[17-09]** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- **[35-12]** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **[49-17]** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **[50-04]** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”



## **false god, foreign god, god, goddess**

### **Definition:**

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [Moloch](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## **fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh**

### **Definition:**

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**fig****Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow to be as tall as 6 meters high and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## fire

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## firstborn

### Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born. Usually the firstborn

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “firstborn” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [son](#), [son of](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **flock, herd**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## forever

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## foundation, founded

### Definition:

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## fruit, fruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces,” that is, children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural
- , “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression, “fruit of the land” could also be translated as, “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as, “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elisabeth says to Mary, “blessed is the fruit of your womb” she means, “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression, “fruit of the vine” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”

- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as, “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression, “fruitful labor” could be translated as, “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in you.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grapeHoly Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, vine, womb)

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **gate, gate bar**

### **Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Gath

### Facts:

Gath was one of the five major cities of the Philistines. It was located north of Ekron and east of Ashdod and Ashkelon.

- The Philistine warrior Goliath was from the city of Gath.
- During the time of Samuel, the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant from Israel and took it to their pagan temple at Ashdod. It was then moved to Gath and later to Ekron. But God punished the people of those cities with disease, so they sent it back to Israel again.
- When David was escaping from King Saul, he fled to Gath and lived there for awhile with his two wives and six hundred men who were his loyal followers.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Ashkelon](#), [Ekron](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## gift

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Gilead

### Definition:

Gilead is the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river, where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region is also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Gilgal

### Facts:

The term Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called “Gilgal” in the Old Testament.
- The word “gilgal” means “circle of stones,” perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as, “the gilgal.” This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Elijah](#), , [Elisha](#), [Jericho](#), [Jordan River](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **glean, gleaning**

### **Definition:**

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard to pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God told the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain.
- A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be, “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: [Boaz](#), [grain](#), [harvest](#), [Ruth](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## good, goodness

### Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-04]** God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ’**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## grape

### Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## guilt, guilty

### Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

ULB exs: take away the guilt of your sin, take away your guilt, guilt offering, punish your guilt, no guilt for murder will attach to him, carry his own guilt, wash away his guilt, be in great guilt, our guilt grows to the heavens

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#)[punish](#), [punishment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#).)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **[39-11]** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **[40-04]** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **[49-10]** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

## **hand, right hand, to hand over**

### **Definition:**

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
  - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
  - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
  - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
  - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
  - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: **adversary, enemy, bless, blessed, blessing, captive, captivity, honor, to honor, power, powers**)

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## harvest

### Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb “to harvest” could be translated as, “to gather in” or “to pick up” or “to collect.”

(See: [firstfruits](#), [festival](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## head

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current

## Hezekiah

### Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah got very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God did a miracle and caused time to move backwards.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Judah](#), [Sennacherib](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **high places**

### **Definition:**

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- When a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel continuing to worship idols.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars are located.

(See also: [altar](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## holy, holiness

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## **Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord**

### **Facts:**

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.



## horse

### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## house

### Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **humble, humility**

### **Definition:**

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand our weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- If a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as, “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: **proud**)

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[17-02]** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[34-10]** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

## idol, idolatrous

### Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** “Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** “You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

## **image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure**

### **Definition:**

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [God](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image of God](#), [image](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

### Definition:

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
  - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
  - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
  - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: **heir**, **Canaan**, **Canaanite**, **Promised Land**)

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

## iniquity

### Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#), [trespass](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## innocent

### Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as, “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- The frequently occurring expression, “innocent blood” could be translated as, “people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed.”
- The expression “shed innocent blood” could be translated as, “kill innocent people” or “kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it.”
- In the context of someone being killed, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as, “not guilty for the death of.”
- When talking about people not accepting the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not” or “not responsible for whether they accept this message.”
- When Judas said, “I have betrayed innocent blood” he was saying, “I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong” or “I have caused the death of a man who was sinless.”
- When Pilate said about Jesus, “I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man,” this could be translated as, “I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.

- [40-04] One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- [40-08] When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God."
-

## Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

## I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh

### Definition:

Many times in the Old Testament, when God is speaking about himself, he uses his name instead of a pronoun.

- For example, instead of saying, “Honor me,” he says, “Honor Yahweh.”
- To make it clear that God is the one talking about himself, the ULB often translates this by adding a pronoun such as in, “Honor me, Yahweh” or “I, Yahweh say.”
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some translators may decide it is natural and clear in their language to simply follow the literal text and use “Yahweh” with no pronoun added.
- Some may decide to use a pronoun with Yahweh only a few times at the beginning of a portion of text, but then omit the pronoun in the rest of that section. An ULB example of this is Deuteronomy 5:9-16.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- This is a summary of possible ways to translate “Yahweh” when God is talking:
  - “Yahweh” (literal)
  - “I, Yahweh” (or “me, Yahweh”)
  - “I” (or “me”)
  - Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”
- Another option would be to only add the pronoun occasionally, but not at every occurrence.
- The translation of this phrase should sound natural in the language and should make it clear that Yahweh is talking about himself.

(See also: [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning, "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means, "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him, so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[07-01]** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **[07-07]** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **[07-10]** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **[08-01]** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

## Jerusalem

### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-05]** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **[18-02]** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **[20-07]** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **[20-12]** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **[38-01]** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **[38-02]** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **[42-08]** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## Jotham

### Definition:

In the Old Testament, there are three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, he did not remove the places of idol worship and this caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Ahaz](#), [Gideon](#), [Uzziah](#), [Azariah](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Judah

### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

## judge

### Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **just, justice, justly**

### **Definition:**

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[17-09]** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **[18-13]** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **[50-17]** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## kingdom

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

## Judah, kingdom of Judah

### Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah, kingdom](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-07]** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-13]** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.
- **[20-05]** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.
- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.



- [20-09] Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

## king

### Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

## **labor pains, in labor**

### **Definition:**

A woman who is “in labor” is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called “labor pains.”

- In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
- The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: [labor](#), [laborer](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **lament, lamentation**

### **Definition:**

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “to lament” could be translated as, “to deeply mourn” or “to wail in grief” or “to be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **last day, last days, latter days**

### **Definition:**

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will be an unknown length of time.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term, “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as, “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament.
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## light

### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light,” and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## lion

### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Lord

### Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

### Facts:

In the Old Testament, “Lord Yahweh” is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term “Lord” is a divine title and “Yahweh” is God’s personal name.
- “Yahweh” is also often combined with the term “God” to form “Yahweh God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of “Yahweh” is used for the translation of God’s personal name, the terms “Lord Yahweh” and “Yahweh God” can be translated literally. Also consider how the term “Lord” is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as “Yahweh Lord.” Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title “Lord” come before or after “Yahweh”?
- “Yahweh God” could also be rendered as “God who is called Yahweh” or “God who is the Living One” or “I am, who is God.”
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering “Yahweh” as “Lord” or “LORD,” the term “Lord Yahweh” could be translated as “Lord God” or “God who is the Lord.” Other possible translations could be, “Master LORD” or “God the LORD.”
- The term “Lord Yahweh” should *not* be rendered as “Lord LORD” because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## lots, casting lots

### Definition:

A “lot” is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. “Casting lots” referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus’ robe.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “drawing lots” or “rolling lots.” Make sure the translation of “cast” does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term “lot” could also be translated as “marked stone” or “pottery piece” or “stick” or “piece of straw.”
- If a decision is made “by lot” this could be translated as, “by drawing (or throwing) lots.”

(See also: [Elizabeth](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## love

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## majesty

### Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as, “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Micah

### Facts:

Micah was a prophet of Judah around 700 years before Christ, when the prophet Isaiah was also ministering to Judah. Another man named Micah lived during the time of the judges.

- The book of Micah is near the end of the Old Testament.
- Micah prophesied about the destruction of Samaria by the Assyrians.
- Micah rebuked the people of Judah for disobeying God and warned them that their enemies would attack them.
- His prophecy ends with a message of hope in God, who is faithful and saves his people.
- In the book of Judges, the story is told of a man named Micah living in Ephraim who made an idol out of silver. A young Levite priest who came to live with him stealing the idol and other things, taking off with a group of Danites. Eventually the Danites and the priest settled in the city of Laish and they set up that same silver idol to worship.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Dan](#), [Ephraim](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Isaiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [judge](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#), [silver](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}



## mighty, might

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## mind

### Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **miracle, wonder, sign**

### **Definition:**

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include, “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [powers](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [16-08] Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- [19-14] God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- [37-10] Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- [43-06] "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- [49-02] Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## Miriam

### Facts:

Miriam was the older sister of Aaron and Moses.

- When she was young, Miriam was instructed by her mother to watch over her baby brother Moses who was in a basket among the reeds of the Nile River. When the pharaoh's daughter found the baby and needed someone to take care of him for her, Miriam brought her mother to do it.
- Miriam led the Israelites in a dance of joy and thanksgiving after they had escaped from the Egyptians by crossing the Red Sea.
- Years later as the Israelites were wandering in the desert, Miriam and Aaron began speaking badly about Moses because he had married a Cushite woman.
- Because of her rebellion in speaking against Moses, God caused Miriam to become sick with leprosy. But later God healed her when Moses interceded for her.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See: [Aaron](#), [Cush](#), [intercede](#), [intercession](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#))

(See also: other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Moab, Moabite, Moabiteess

### Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabiteess" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as, "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Judea](#), [Lot](#), [Ruth](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**mock, ridicule, scoff at****Definition:**

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [21-12] Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- [39-05] The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- [39-12] The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- [40-04] Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- [40-05] The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

## Moses

### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Miriam](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[12-05]** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **[12-07]** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **[12-12]** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **[13-07]** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.



## **mourn, mourning**

### **Facts:**

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## name

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## neighbor

### Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## oil

### Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#)))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## olive

### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit is green in color, changing to black as they ripen. Olives are used for eating and extracting oil.
- Olive oil was used for cooking, for lighting lamps, and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## peace, peaceful

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## people group, peoples, the people, a people

### Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [14-02] God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- [21-02] God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- [42-08] "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- [42-10] "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- [48-11] Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- [50-03] He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## people of God, my people

### Definition:

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **perish, perishing, perishable**

### **Definition:**

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **pillar, column**

### **Definition:**

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- AS a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [founded](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## possess, possession

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## power, powers

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[32-15]** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **[43-06]** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

## **priest, priesthood**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.



## **proclaim, proclamation**

### **Definition:**

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

## **prostitute, harlot, whore**

### **Definition:**

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [sexual immorality](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **punish, punishment**

### **Definition:**

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting  
their

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- **[49-11]** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

**raise, rise, risen, arise, arose****Definition:****raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

**rise, arise**

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.



## reap, reaper

### Definition:

The term “reap” means to harvest crops such as grain. A “reaper” is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God’s family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person’s actions, as in the saying “a man reaps what he plants.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Other ways to translate “to reap” and “reaper” could include “to harvest” and “harvester” (or “person who harvests”). (See link to “harvest” page for more translation suggestions.)

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [harvest](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## rebel, rebellious, rebellion

### Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

:(See also: [authority](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [14-14] After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- [18-09] Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- [18-13] Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- [20-07] But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- [45-03] Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

## reign

### Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term ”reign is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## rejoice

### Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**remnant****Definition:**

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “leftover” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who survived attacks from outsiders and lived to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- A phrase such as, “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[16-02]** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **[17-13]** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **[19-18]** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **[24-02]** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **[42-08]** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- **[44-05]** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

## reproach

### Definition:

To reproach someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior. A reproach is the negative comment about the person.

- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.
- The word “reproach” can also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- “To reproach” could also be translated as, “to rebuke” or “to accuse” or “to criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [rebuke](#), [shame](#), [shameful](#), [ashamed](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **restore, restoration**

### **Definition:**

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored, has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people are restored to their home country it means they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include: “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- An expression for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it means it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration,” could be translated as, “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## righteous, righteousness

### Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-02] But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- [04-08] God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- [17-02] David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [23-01] Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- [50-10] Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

**robe****Definition:**

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by both men and women. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short in length.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: [royal](#), [tunic](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## rod

### Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that is used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms, “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod is also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## ruin, ruins

### Definition:

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, “to ruin” could be translated as “to destroy” or “to spoil” or “to make useless” or “to break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

Waiting

## ruler, rulers, rule

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## salvation

### Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word “save” or “rescue” as in, “when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God will rescue his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as, “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as, “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), [safe](#), [Savior](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Samaria, Samaritan

### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on the west and the Jordan River on the east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region and moved them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on the north and the region of Judea on the south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Galilee](#), [Galilean](#), [Judea](#), [Sharon](#), [Plain of Sharon](#), [kingdom of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **[27-08]** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **[27-09]** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **[45-07]** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

## save, safe

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”



- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Savior

### Facts:

The term “Savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include, “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: [deliver](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [salvation](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **serpent, snake, viper**

### **Facts:**

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and which moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous, but they deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before that they had legs.

(Translation suggestions: **How to Translate Names**)

(See also: **curse, cursed, deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive, disobey, disobedient, disobedience, Eden, garden of Eden, evil, wicked, wickedness, offspring, prey, to prey on, Satan, devil, evil one, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning, tempt, temptation**)

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**shame, shameful, ashamed****Definition:**

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## sheep, ram, ewe

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

## shepherd, to shepherd

### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- In the Old Testament, God is called the “shepherd” of his people because he takes care of all their needs and protects them. He also leads and guides them.
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus calls himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also refers to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” is used to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The term “pastor” is the same word as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as, “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The expression, “to shepherd (a flock)” could be translated as, “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [09-11] Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- [17-02] David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- [23-06] That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- [23-08] The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- [30-03] To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- \* **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- \* **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- \* **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- \* **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- \* **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- \* **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- \* **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- \* **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- \* **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## sow, sower, plant

### Definition:

To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively as in, “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result. And if a person does good to others, he will receive a positive result.

### Translations Suggestions

- The term “sow” could also be translated as “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include, “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words depending on what is being planted.
- The expression, “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as, “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [reap](#), [reaper](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **spear**

### **Definition:**

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [sword](#), [warrior](#), [soldier](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## spirit, spiritual

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [13-03] Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- [48-07] All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

**stone, stoning****Definition:**

A stone is a small rock. The term “stoning” refers to throwing stones and larger rocks at a person in order to kill him.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- The New Testament tells of a time that Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed because of testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **strong drink**

### **Definition:**

The term “strong drink” refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

- Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone a process of fermentation.
- Kinds of “strong drink” include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. In the Bible, grape wine is the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
- Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the “Nazirite vow” were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
- This term could also be translated as, “fermented drink” or “alcoholic drink.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Nazirite](#), [Nazirite vow](#), [vow](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## stronghold, fortress, fortified

### Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## sword

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## temple

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [court Zion](#), [Mount Zion house](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-02]** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **[20-07]** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- [20-13] When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- [25-04] Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- [40-07] When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## testimony, testify

### Definition:

The terms “testimony” and “testify” refer to making a statement about something that one knows to be true.

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term is often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of the testimony](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **thresh, threshing**

### **Definition:**

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## tongue

### Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of “tongue” in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- The expression, “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire.
- In the expression “my tongue rejoices,” the term “tongue” refers to the whole person. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The phrase “lying tongues” refers to a person’s voice or speech. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated by “language” or “spiritual language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as, “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as, “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as, “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as, “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## transgress, transgression

### Definition:

The terms “transgress” and “transgression” refer to breaking a command, rule, or moral code.

- Figuratively, “transgression” can also be described as “crossing a line,” that is, going beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression”, “sin”, “iniquity”, and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance. (See: [parallelism](#))

(See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## true, truth, come true

### Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.



- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

## trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

## unclean

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unholy](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## unjust, unjustly, injustice

### Definition:

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair, and often, harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **vine**

### **Definition:**

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means, “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**vineyard****Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: **Metaphor**)
- Vineyard could be also translated as, “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: **grape**, **Israel**, **Israelites**, **nation of Israel**, **vine**)

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**vision****Facts:**

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

**Translation Suggestion**

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## voice

### Definition:

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## walk

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**watchtower, tower****Definition:**

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [watch](#), [watchman](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## water, waters

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as, “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as, “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

## witness, eyewitness

### Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression, “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person-seeing-it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as, “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as, “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as, “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.

- [39-04] The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- [42-08]"It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- [43-07]"We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

**woe****Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says, “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression, “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “(The people in) that city will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression, “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## word

### Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, “The seed is the **word of God**.

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## works, deeds, work, acts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## worship

### Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Yahweh

### Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-14]** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **[13-05]** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."



## **Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host**

### **Definition:**

The terms “Yahweh of hosts” and “God of hosts” are titles that express God’s authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term “host” or “hosts” is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to “host of the heavens” refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, “Lord of hosts” means the same as “Yahweh of hosts” but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word “Yahweh” is not used in the New Testament.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “Yahweh of hosts” could include, “Yahweh, who rules all the angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler of all creation.”
- The phrase “of hosts” in the terms “God of hosts” and “Lord of hosts” would be translated the same way as in the phrase “Yahweh of hosts” above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term “Yahweh” and prefer to use the capitalized word, “LORD” instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term “LORD of hosts” would be used in the Old Testament for “Yahweh of hosts.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Lord Yahweh](#), [Yahweh God Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Zion, Mount Zion

### Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## translationAcademy

### Abstract Nouns

*This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

### Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
  - “Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
  - “But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
  - “But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
  - “But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.”
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
  - “Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
  - “Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”

- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
  - "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
  - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

## Active or Passive

*This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** *My father* built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

**ACTIVE:** *My father* built the house in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built by my father in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

## Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

## Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)

- It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
- It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*



## Apostrophe

*This answers the question: What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Mountains of Gilboa, Let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling the mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

### Description

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to.

### Examples from the Bible

Come now, you who are rich, cry out loud because of the miseries coming upon you.  
(James 5:1 ULB)

James wrote to the church, which was made up of poor people, as if rich people could hear him, showing his anger about what rich people were doing.

The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, '... on you they will burn men's bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

### Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Have the speaker express his feelings toward the thing or idea without speaking directly to it.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, you may preserve the meaning of the apostrophe and let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him.

- **The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, ' ... on you they will burn men's bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)**
  - "The man of God said, "This is what Yahweh says *about this altar*' ... They will burn men's bones on *it*."

## Doublet

*This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

### Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

### Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- “King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

## Ellipsis

*This answers the question: What is ellipsis?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

### Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous  
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

### Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”  
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
  - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight*."** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

## Euphemism

*This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
  - “whether we are alive or dead”



## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

*This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?*

**Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

## Hyperbole

*This answers the question: What is hyperbole?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

### Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

### Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

### Examples from the Bible

#### Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

### Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
  - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
  - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

## Idiom

*This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

### Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

### Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
  - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
  - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
  - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
  - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
  - “I am crying my eyes out”

## Inclusive “We”

*This answers the question: What is inclusive “we”?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- **Pronouns**

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.”

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A> ) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/2K2gFlPMFVvk> ).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*



- *Exclusive “We”*

## Litotes

*This answers the question: What is litotes?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

### Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

### Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

### Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what is true.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what is true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
  - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
  - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
  - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."

## Metaphor

*This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

### Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

## Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life.* He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.” (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

## Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay” and “potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees*.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,"

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."
- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB )

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."
- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted."

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
  - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
  - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

*To learn more about common metaphors read:*

- **Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns**



## Metonymy

*This answers the question: What is a metonymy?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

### Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
  - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
    - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
  - **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
    - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
    - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
  - **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
    - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

## Parallelism

*This answers the question: What is parallelism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

### Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### **Translation Strategies**

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

### **Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

## Personification

*This answers the question: What is personification?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- “sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

**Note:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Rhetorical Question

*This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

*Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?* Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a women would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

### Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- ***Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!"*
- ***Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?*** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - *"Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!"*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- ***What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...*** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
  - *"This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."*
- ***Is this how you insult God's high priest?*** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
  - *You should not insult God's high priest!"*
- ***Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?*** (Job 3:11 ULB)
  - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!"*
- ***And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?*** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
  - *"How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!"*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- ***Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?*** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
  - *"You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don't you?"*

## Simile

*This answers the question: What is a simile?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

*for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky*, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightening. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
  - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and *sharper than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
  - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
  - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as *a grain of mustard*,** (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
  - "If you have faith even as small as *a tiny seed*"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
  - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Synecdoche

*This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
  - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
  - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

## Forms of You

*This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd*

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

## How to Translate Names

*This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)



Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

### Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

- “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

- “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)

- “a young man named *Paul*”<sup>1</sup> The footnote would look like:  
◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)

- “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)

- “a young man named *Saul*”

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) \*  
“But \_\_Saul\_\_, who is also called \_\_Paul\_\_, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” \* \*\*It came about in Iconium that \_\_Paul\_\_ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue\*\*  
([[:en:bible:notes:act:14:01|Acts 14:1 ULB])

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"  
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
  - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

## Numbers

*This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

### Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

### Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

### Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

### Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house *100,000* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

#### 1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *100,000* talents of gold, one *1,000,000* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

#### 2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

#### 3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house one *hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

#### 4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

#### 5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents),* and bronze and iron in large quantities.

**Consistency**

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

**Consistency in the ULB and UDB**

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

## Translate Unknowns

*This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

- "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."

- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

- "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.



- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

- "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
- "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

- "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."

- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

- "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

- "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"

- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

- "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)

- "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*